## Amendments Page

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Serial</th>
<th>Amendments</th>
<th>Signature</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Artillery Sect 4:1 - 24</td>
<td></td>
<td>13-09-2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Close Protection Sect 25:1 - 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>04-10-2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Infantry Sect 13:10 - 11</td>
<td></td>
<td>24-10-2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Admin 9 - Organisation Structure</td>
<td></td>
<td>04-04-2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>New course CATC 6:6, amendment to 6:2 &amp; 6:4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The British Army is a highly professional organisation with extensive experience in training officers, soldiers, defence civilian staff and international students. It is rightly acknowledged as a leader in the provision of world class military training. This training expertise, coupled with the British Army’s operational record ensures that our training is delivered from a base of experience and not just theory.

International Defence Training (Army (IDT(A)) continues to maintain very close relationships with DE STRAT, International Policy and Plans (IPP), European Bilateral Relations and EU Exit (EBRX) (formerly NEP) and the Army International Branch (AIB) to ensure that the training delivered to international students is in line with Defence Engagement policy. This training is a vital enabler in supporting the Defence Engagement principles abroad and developing partner nation’s personnel in the disciplines of defence and security.

IDT(A) is the primary point of contact for international students attending British Army individual training courses and is responsible for their administration and attendance.

IDT(A) aims to continue to provide a substantial and meaningful contribution to Defence Engagement and Army International Activities (AIA) whilst helping to establish long term relationships in the wider international defence community.
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Amendments Page</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Foreword</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Administration</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Defence Training (Army)</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Applying to Train with The British Army</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Fitness Requirements</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>What about funding?</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry Standards - International English Language Testing System (IELTS)</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Medical Arrangements</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passports and Visas</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Travel within the United Kingdom</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dress</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARTD / Army UK Training Locations</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For Courses Starting After 1 April 2017</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EOD &amp; Counter-IED</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Improvised Explosive Device Disposal (IEDD)</td>
<td>1:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Maritime Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD)</td>
<td>1:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Search Advisers (ISA)</td>
<td>1:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Counter - Improvised Explosive Device (C-IED) Trainer</td>
<td>1:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Ground Sign Awareness Instructor</td>
<td>1:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Animal Related Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arms Explosive Search (AES) Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency Detection Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Detection Dog Handler (Multi-Purpose)</td>
<td>2:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennel Assistant</td>
<td>2:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennel Manager</td>
<td>2:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrol Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Police Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical Training Assistants - PTA</td>
<td>2:8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracker Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Search Dog Handler</td>
<td>2:10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Armour Centre Courses</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving &amp; Maintenance Instructor</td>
<td>3:1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCO Gunnery Instructor CVR(T) Close Reconnaissance</td>
<td>3:2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental Gunnery Officer Challenger 2 or CVR(T)</td>
<td>3:3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental NCO Gunnery CR2 Instructor</td>
<td>3:4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental NCO Gunnery Instructor</td>
<td>3:5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Leader Armoured</td>
<td>3:6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Leader Formation Reconnaissance</td>
<td>3:7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artillery Courses
Gunner Staff Officers Course (Close Support)  4:1
Instructor Gunner ISTAR/GBAD  4:2
Gunner Career Course (Close Support) (GCC (CS))  4:3
Gunner Career Course (ISTAR GBAD)  4:4
Fire Support Team Commander (FST Comd)  4:5
Fire Support Team Level 4 Course  4:6
Battery Commander (BC) Common Module  4:7
Battery Commanders (Close Support)  4:8
Battery Commander (ISTAR) - Intelligence Surveillance Target Acquisition & Reconnaissance  4:9
Battery Commander (BC) Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD)  4:10
Joint Battlespace Management Course (JBMC).  4:11
Royal Artillery Staff Officer's Course  4:12
Young Officer Course - Common Module  4:13
Young Officer - Close Support  4:14
Young Officer - Air Defence  4:15
Young Officer - Tactical ISTAR  4:16
Young Officer Course – MLRS  4:17
Command Post Officer (CPO) - Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD)  4:18
International Tactical Targeting (Non FYES)  4:19
GBAD Warfare Officer course (GWO)  4:20
Full Spectrum Targeting (FSpecT).  4:21

Catering Courses
Defence Chef Basic  5:1
Food Service Officer  5:2
Production Supervisors  5:3
Royal Logistics Core (RLC) Food Services Unit Catering Manager (UCM)  5:4
Royal Logistics Core (RLC) Food Services Chef Class 1 (CC1)  5:5

Combined Arms & Collective Training Courses
Combined Arms Tactics Course (CATAC)  6:1
Brigade Commanders’ Programme NATO Only (BCP)  6:2
Light Close Reconnaissance Commanders’ Course (LCRCC)  6:3
Brigade Legal Officers Course (BLOC)  6:4
Light Cavalry Commanders’ Course (LCCC)  6:5

Cranfield Defence & Security University Courses
List of Courses  7:1

Defence College of Technical Training
Basic Trade Courses  8:1
Class 1 (Upgrader) Courses  8:2
Supervisor Courses  8:3
Troop Commander  8:4
Installation Technician Cl1  8:5
International Officers Electronic Warfare  8:6
Defence School of Electronic and Mechanical Engineering  8:7
**Drill Courses**

- All Arms Advanced Drill Instructor 9:1
- Basic Drill Instructor 9:2
- All Arms Basic Drill Instructor 9:3
- Drum Drill Major 9:4

**Driving Courses**

- Defence Staff Car Driver 10:1
- Master Driver 10:2
- Defence Transport Manager 10:3
- Defence Road Safety Advisor (DRSA) 10:4
- Defence Transport Operator 10:5
- Defence Junior Transport Operator 10:6
- Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM) Instructor 10:7
- Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM) Operator 10:8
- Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver – Tanker 10:9
- Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver – Transporter 10:10
- Vehicle BV 206 (Blackshod) Instructor 10:11
- Defence Unit Vehicle Winch Instructor 10:12
- Specialist Driver Class 1 10:13
- Specialist Driver Upgrading Class 2 to 1 (Royal Engineer) 10:14
- Combat Support Boat (CST) Trailer Operator Driver 10:15
- Mountain Rescue Emergency Response Driver 10:16
- Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) Van Driver 10:17
- Defence BV 206 (Blackshod) Driver 10:18
- Defence Licence Acquisition Inst (SS) 10:19
- Defence Attaché Staff Advanced Driving 10:20
- Defence Skid Cradle Instructor 10:21
- TFLRT Operator (2400kg) 10:22
- TFLRT Operator (4000kg) 10:23
- Vehicle Quad Bike Operator 10:24
- Vehicle CST (W) Operator 10:25
- Vehicle WT / MLET (19 Tonne) Operator 10:26
- Combat Support Boat (CSB) Trailer Operator Instructor 10:27
- B (Car) Vehicle Inspection and Maintenance Op 10:28
- Defence General Service Driver Conversion Instructor (Steady State) 10:29
- Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructor 10:30
- KALMAR RTCH RT 240 Operator 10:31
- TFLRT (2400kg) Instructor 10:32
- Vehicle Quad Bike Instructor 10:33
- Vehicle Sp Veh EPLS Instructor 10:34
- RODET Instructor 10:35
- Civilian Armoured Vehicle Instructor 10:36
- Close Support Tanker (Water) Instructor 10:37
- Modified Light Equipment Transporter (MLET) Instructor 10:38
- Defence General Service Driver Conversion 10:39
- Defence Fork Lift Truck (FLT) Reach Operator 10:40
- Defence Fork Lift Truck (FLT) Instructor (Industrial) 10:41
- Defence FLT Operator (Industrial) 10:42
### Engineering Courses
- Clerk Of Works (Construction) 11:1
- Clerk Of Works (Electrical) 11:2
- Clerk Of Works (Mechanical) 11:3
- Military Engineer (Bricklayer and Concreter) Class R 11:4
- Military Engineer (Electrician) 11:5
- Military Engineer (Fitter General) Class 2 11:6
- Military Engineer (Plant Operator Mechanic) Class 2 11:7
- Military Plant Foreman 11:8
- Professional Engineer Training (Civil) MSc 11:9
- Professional Engineering Training (Electrical and Mechanical) MSc 11:10
- RE Troop Commander 11:11
- Demolition Safety Officer 11:12
- Junior Commanders Course 11:13
- Managing Successful Programmes (MSP) Commanders Course 11:14
- Basic Trade 11:15
- Class 1 (Upgrader) 11:16
- Artificer 11:17
- Equipment 11:18
- Engineering and Equipment Support Management 11:19
- Health and Safety 11:20

### Finance & Admin Courses
- All Arms Basic Bookkeeper 12:1
- Fund Manager 12:2
- Regimental Accountant 12:3
- Regimental Administrative Officer 12:4

### Infantry Courses
- All Arms Skill At Arms Instructor 13:1
- Infantry Warrant Officer 13:2
- Live Firing Tactical Training (LFTT) 13:3
- Platoon Commander Battle Course 13:4
- Platoon Sergeant Battle Course 13:5
- 81mm Mortar Platoon Commander Course 13:6
- JAVELIN Platoon Commander/2 IC 13:7
- International Sniper Section Commander Course (ISSCC) 13:8
- Sniper Platoon Commander Course (SPCC) 13:9
- All Arms Basic Tactics Instructors’ Course (AA BTIC) 13:10
- Urban Operations Instructors’ Course (UOIC) 13:11
- Jungle Warfare Instructors Course (Brunei) (JWIC) 13:12
- Operational Tracking Instructors’ Course (Brunei) (OTIC) 13:13

### Intelligence & Security Courses
- International Imagery Analysis Course (IIAC) 14:1
- International Intelligence Director Course (IIDC) 14:2
- International Intelligence Analysis Training Course (IIATC) 14:3
- International Imagery Analysis Course (IIAC) 14:4
- MSc In Geospatial Intelligence (RE (Geo) Officers Course) 14:5
- Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) User 14:6
### JSCSC Courses

Advanced Command & Staff Course (ACSC)  

### Language Courses

- English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase A: 16:1
- English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase B: 16:2
- Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RMAS) Eng Lang Trg (ELT). Phase A: 16:3
- Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RMAS) Preparatory Course. Phase B: 16:4
- Bespoke Military English Courses (Army): 16:5

### Logistics Courses

- International Logistics Officers’ Course: 17:1
- Joint Logistic Operations Course: 17:2
- Joint Service Movements Staff Course: 17:3
- Movement Control Officers Course: 17:4
- Officers Petroleum Course: 17:5
- Consignment Tracking Unit Operator (CTUO): 17:6
- Dangerous Goods by Air (CAA Accredited): 17:7
- Dangerous Goods by Surface: 17:8
- Defence Logistic Management Course (DLMC): 17:9
- Defence Logistics Staff Course (DLSC): 17:10
- Explosives Authorised Representatives: 17:11
- Managers and Supervisors Fuels & Lubricants (F&L): 17:12
- Officers’ Movements Training (OMT): 17:13
- Supply Basic Training Course: 17:14
- Supply Specialist Ocean Terminal Course: 17:15

### Medical Courses

- Military Pre-Hospital Emergency Care Course: 18:1
- Military Major Incident Medical Management and Support (MiMIMMS): 18:2
- Battlefield Advanced Trauma Life Support (BATLS): 18:3
- Ethical Issues For Medical Personnel Captured Persons (CPERS)- Awareness: 18:4
- Ethical Issues For Medical Personnel Captured Persons (CPERS)- Practitioner: 18:5
- Post Graduate Medical Officer Phase 2b (PGMO): 18:6
- Joint Medical Operations Planning Course (JMOP): 18:7
- Medical Humanitarian and Stabilisation Operations (MHSO): 18:8

### Music Courses

- Musician: 19:1
- Piper Class 1: 19:2
- Piper Class 2: 19:3
- Piper Class 3: 19:4
- Pipe Majors’ Course: 19:5
- Drummer (Highland) Class 3: 19:6
- Class 1 Drummer/Drum Major: 19:7

### Photography Courses

- Defence Photographer Course: 20:1
- Defence Media Operations Photographer Course: 20:2
- Non-Specialist Basic Camera Handling Course (Army): 20:3
### Physical Training Courses

- All Arms Physical Training Instructor (AAPTI) 21:1
- Royal Army Physical Training Corps Instructor Course 21:2
- Physical Training Instructor Re-qualification 21:3

### Police Training Courses

- Defence Guarding Specialist 22:1
- Site Commanders 22:2
- Crime Scene Investigator’s 22:3
- Aviation & Venue Security 22:4
- Incident First Responder’s 22:5
- Military Police Officers 22:6
- Personal Safety Training Basic User 22:7
- Personal Safety Training Basic Unit Instructor 22:8
- Conflict Management and Restraint 22:9

### RMAS Courses

- Regular Army Commissioning 23:1
- Junior Officers Tactics Awareness Course (JOTAC) 23:2
- Junior Command and Staff Course (Land) (JCSC(L)) 23:3

### Survey Courses

- Master of Science (MSc) in Geo Spatial Intelligence 24:1
- Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) Advanced User 24:2
- Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) User 24:3

### Close Protection Courses

- Close Protection Course (CPC) 25:1
- Bespoke Close Protection Course (BCPC) 25:2
- Close Protection Evasive Driving Course - Basic (CPEDC-B) 25:3
- Close Protection Evasive Driving Course - Advanced (CPEDC-A) 25:4
International Defence Training (Army)

Administrivia

International Defence Training (Army)
Land Warfare Centre

SO1 IDT(A)
Lt Col James Askew
94344 8084
+44 (0) 1980 61 8084
james.askew107@mod.gov.uk

SO2 Plans
Maj Jimmy Stewart
94381 2817
+44 (0) 1985 22 2817
jimmy.stewart107@mod.gov.uk

SO2 Ops
Maj Peter White
94381 2804
+44 (0) 1985 22 2804
peter.white102@mod.gov.uk

SO2 Trg
WO2 Alex Laird
94381 2806
+44 (0) 1985 22 2806
alex.laird342@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) SO3a
Amy Hahner
94344 8079
+44 (0) 1980 61 8079
amy.hahner411@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) SO3b
Tamika Lee
94344 5624
+44 (0) 1980 61 5624	
tamika.lee103@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) SO3c
Charmaine Fealy
94344 5036
+44 (0) 1980 61 5036
charmaine.fealy333@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) SO3d
Taneel Roberts
94344 5685
+44 (0) 1980 61 5685		
taneel.roberts114@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) E1a
Jane Llewellyn
94344 8279
+44 (0) 1980 61 8279
angela.llewellyn126@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) E1b
Andrew Foster
94344 8290
+44 (0) 1980 61 8290
andrew.foster109@mod.gov.uk

IDT(A) E1c
Andrew Eater
94344 6269
+44 (0) 1980 61 6269
andrew.eater100@mod.gov.uk

Address:
International Defence Training (Army)
International Defence Training (Army)
Land Warfare Centre
IDT(A), HQ LWC, Trenchard Lines, Upavon, Wiltshire SN9 6BE, United Kingdom

Fax:
+44 (0) 1980 615305 (Civ)

Group Email:
tw-cps-idea-mailbox@mod.gov.uk

Webpage:
https://www.army.mod.uk/who-we-are/our-schools-and-colleges/international-defence-training-army/
Applying to Train with The British Army

Who should originate the application?
Applications are made either through the Enhanced Security Cooperation Activity Plan Application for Defence Engagement (ESCAPADE) or by written approach to the appropriate IDT(A) desk officer detailing the type of course/training required. This also includes Joint Services Command & Staff College and Royal Military Academy Sandhurst which although administered by IDT(A), are by invitation only.

The originating authorities are listed below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country/Region</th>
<th>NATO &amp; Commonwealth Nations</th>
<th>Most other Nations</th>
<th>USA</th>
<th>Canada</th>
<th>Brunei</th>
<th>British funded Courses</th>
<th>Civilian Company</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Originating Authority</td>
<td>DA based in London</td>
<td>UK DAs or London DAs</td>
<td>Originating Military Unit</td>
<td>Canadian Defence Academy Directorate of Learner Support</td>
<td>MINDEF &amp; UK DA</td>
<td>Nation contacts UK DA in country</td>
<td>Company Representative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

When should the originating authority apply?
Bids are more likely to be successful if applications are made 6 months in advance of the course start date, although every effort will be made to accommodate bids submitted in a shorter time.

The Offer of Training
Upon receipt of a training request the IDT(A) desk officer will check training availability, dates, cost and any clearances required.

IDT(A) will issue a formal offer (including English language requirements, security and assurance certificates, medical standards etc). Joining Instructions will also be issued.

On receipt of the formal offer by the originating authority, the student will sit the International English Language Testing System (IELTS) assessment, if necessary.

How do we accept offer of training?
The Letter of Training Arranged (LOTA) is accepted by the originating authority. The originating authority will make all necessary arrangements, including travel arrangements to prepare the student for training in the UK. Invoices will be forwarded by Defence Business Services (DBS) in Liverpool.

If the deadline for acceptance of the training has passed and the offer of training has not been accepted, declined or an extension of the deadline requested, it will be assumed by IDT(A) that the training is not required and it may be offered elsewhere.

Once the course has begun IDT(A), will monitor the student’s progress, forward reports to the originating authority and advise and liaise as necessary on welfare or disciplinary problems. On completion of the training, the training unit will forward final reports to the originating authority.

What happens if we have to cancel our place?
Since training places are in high demand, the British Ministry of Defence (MoD) reserves the right to raise cancellation charges once the offer of training is formally accepted. Valid reasons for cancellation are normally accepted without charge.

What happens if the student is withdrawn from training?
IDT(A) will give maximum warning to the originator copying in relevant authorities, when failure to progress, disciplinary problems or other reasons may lead to a student’s withdrawal from training. The overseas DA in London will be encouraged to discuss any problems with the students. However, once the decision to suspend a student has been taken it is final.
Physical Fitness Requirements

Candidates training with the British Army should be in general good health and physically fit. Where training courses have specific medical or physical standards, these are detailed in the catalogue.

It is generally accepted that students on physical courses should be able to obtain a ‘Pass’ on the Personal Fitness Test (PFT). This involves 3 components - press-ups, sit-ups followed by a 1.5 mile (2.4km) timed run. The test is outlined below.

Some courses are more physically demanding (e.g. the Platoon Sergeants Battle Course and the Commissioning Course at the Royal Military Academy at Sandhurst) and students must be physically fit and robust for such courses. IDT(A) can provide information about physical requirements for such courses so that students are fit for the course. Failure to meet these standards could result in the withdrawal of a student from training.

The basic fitness standard is assessed by the Army Personal Fitness Assessment (APFA)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Press-ups</th>
<th>Sit-ups</th>
<th>Run</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Male</td>
<td>Female</td>
<td>Male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 or under</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10:30 or less</td>
<td>13:00 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 -34</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:00 or less</td>
<td>13:30 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35 - 39</td>
<td>39</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11:30 or less</td>
<td>14:00 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40 - 44</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:00 or less</td>
<td>14:30 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45 - 49</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12:30 or less</td>
<td>15:00 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 - 54</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13:30 or less</td>
<td>16:00 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55 - 59</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:10 or less</td>
<td>16:40 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60 - 64</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14:40 or less</td>
<td>17:10 or less</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
What about funding?

At the time of the course request the originator should state how the course/training will be funded. The main forms of funding are as follows:

- **Recipient Nation Funded/Self-funded.** The country whose personnel is attending/using the training will pay.
- **UK funded:** Funding may be available through:
  - Defence Assistance Fund (DAF)
  - Conflict, Stability and Security Fund (CSSF)
  - Counter-Terrorism Programme Fund (CTPF)
  - Defence Engagement Provision (DEP).
- The British Defence Attaché/Adviser in country will know if he has the funds allocated for use by the overseas country.

It is assumed that all training will be self funded unless the ESCAPADE informs us to the contrary.

**What about payment for the training and invoicing?**

All British Training is ‘pre-payment’ and therefore, whichever method of funding is used, the course/training fees should be paid before training commences. The normal arrangement is that an invoice will be raised up to four weeks before the start of a course by the Defence Business Services (DBS) requesting payment of the course fee and, where appropriate, messing and accommodation charges. Payment is due on receipt of the invoice to DBS at the address given on the invoice. In many cases the request for payment, and the subsequent payment itself, will complete the financial transaction since the sum requested will take account of all costs associated with the course. In some cases however supplementary payments may be required, or refunds may be due. These will be calculated by DBS at the end of the course. On occasions it may be necessary to present a supplementary bill after a course is completed for additional costs which cannot be forecast in advance. Examples of such costs are stores, ammunition, extra tuition, additional travel costs and medical expenses. Payment for additional tuition will be calculated to the nearest day.

**What is included in the course charges?**

British Army Training charges are liable to revision throughout the year. The fees for training courses cover:

- Tuition.
- The cost of transport on duty journeys taken as part of the course, and payment of subsistence allowance to students whilst on course visits.
- Medical and Dental treatment provided by the UK Armed Forces Medical Services, should this be necessary, during the period of training, with the exception of the supply of spectacles, dental bridges or dental appliances for pre-existing medical or dental conditions.
- The loan of working/protective clothing and kit as necessary for the course. Normally these articles are to be returned when no longer required in connection with the course of instruction. Charges will be made for any article lost or damaged in circumstances in which a charge would be made against a British student.
- Messing (food) and accommodation charges.

**What is not included in the course charges?**

- **Pay and Allowances:** Responsibility for pay and allowances for International students whilst training with the British Army rests with the parent government concerned. UK Service Accounting Officers have no authority to issue pay and allowances to students from MOD funds, but may pay as agents if the appropriate High Commission/Embassy first provides a cheque for the requisite amount drawn in favour of the Training Establishment’s public account. Accounting Officers may also assist in opening bank accounts for students if it is the wish of their government that they should receive their pay and allowances in this manner.
- **Compensation:** Compensation payable to third parties for death or injury, or loss or damage to property, caused by acts of omissions of the student.
- **Transportation:** The cost of transport before the course, on leaving the course, between courses or whilst on leave or other non-duty journeys during the course, is the responsibility of the student’s own authorities. Students living in private accommodation with their families are to pay for their own transport to and from the place of training.
- **Non-effective Benefits:** The responsibility for retired pay, pensions, disability awards etc, payable to, or in respect of, the student, remains with the parent government concerned.
- **Messing and Accommodation:** Some courses will make a separate, additional charge for messing and accommodation which is determined according to rank and standard of accommodation (see below for more
• **Loss of Uniform/Equipment:** MOD will not be responsible for compensating the student for the loss of, or damage to, his uniform or Service equipment.

• **Mess Bills:** Students are required to pay their Mess Bills personally and are to pay for cigarettes, confectionery, drinks and extra food consumed in canteens and clubs. Officers’ and SNCO’s Mess Bills, which include mandatory charges, such as mess subscriptions, are to be paid in sterling on the due date to the respective Mess managers. Credit cards are not accepted.

• **Clothing Maintenance:** This includes charges for and dry cleaning of personal laundry; alterations to uniforms; footwear repairs.

• **Funeral expenses:** Funeral expenses following the death of a student.

• **Family Maintenance.**

• **External Examination Fees.**

• **Medical/Dental Treatment for Families.**

**What about Messing and Accommodation?**

Most International Students are accommodated and fed (messing) in single living accommodation in either the Officers’ or Warrant Officer/Sergeants’ Messes. Most courses are ‘flat rate’ and include Messing and Accommodation (M & A) charges. However, students are still required to pay their personal mess bills (see above - ‘What is not included in the course charges’). Occasionally, Messing and Accommodation charges are not included in the tuition fees of some courses. In such cases, International students are required to pay what is called the ‘non-entitled rates’ for their M & A. These M & A charges can either be added to the same bill as the tuition charges (Value Added Tax (VAT) at 20% is not added to this bill) or where countries have agreed, they can pay the M & A locally, whilst at the course (VAT is thus applicable). Locally payable M & A charges should be paid by cash or cheque to the relevant mess. Please note that British Army Messes do not have credit card facilities.
In order to gain maximum benefit from the training, international students require a defined level of English. Some courses will require a higher level of English than others, particularly those involving technical work or where safety procedures are a major factor. All British Army Training should have a defined level of English which equates to an International English Language Testing System level. The IELTS assessment is run in most capital cities by the British Council. (See www.britishcouncil.org and www.ielts.org for further information).

Who is exempt from taking an IELTS assessment?
The following potential students are not required to take an IELTS assessment:
• Those whose first language is English.
• Those who originate from a NATO nation (equivalent STANAG result required)
• Those who are returning for training within 5 years of taking a test (providing the IELTS requirement is not at a higher level)

How does the potential student take the IELTS assessment?
If the potential student is required to take the IELTS assessment, the student can contact the British Embassy or High Commission to organise a test. Alternatively, the student can approach the British Council direct, in their country.
The originating authority will pay the test charges for potential students who do not reach the required IELTS score. IDT(A) will pay for one test per course place for UK funded students only.
The originating authority will pay the test charges in all other cases or when potential students do not reach the required IELTS standard.

What if the student is unable to take the IELTS assessment?
The requirement to take an IELTS assessment can be waived in exceptional circumstances. In these circumstances the originating authority is responsible for ensuring that the potential student has acquired the appropriate level of English to participate in the training. The British Army reserves the right to withdraw any students from training if their English is not adequate for the course and the originating authority will still be liable for all course fees.

Where can English Language Training be given?
• With the British Council in country. This is most suitable for refresher training immediately prior to a student’s departure for UK. This is usually an inexpensive option.
• DCLC specialises in full-time, high-intensity, language courses, and its training design and delivery are certified to the ISO 9001 international quality standard. Its main role is to provide foreign language training to the British Armed forces and English language training to military personnel from overseas. Please contact IDT(A) for details of courses at DCLC or see courses listed in this brochure.
• Private language schools in the UK. It should be borne in mind that standards vary considerably, and that the course will not be tailored to military expectations. IDT(A) cannot administer students looking for or undertaking private language training.

What does the IELTS Score mean?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Band</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Expert User</td>
<td>Has fully operational command of language: appropriate, accurate and fluent with complete understanding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Very Good User</td>
<td>Has fully operational command of language with only occasional unsystematic inaccuracies and inappropriacies. Misunderstandings may occur in unfamiliar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Good User</td>
<td>Has operational command of language, though with occasional inaccuracies. Generally handles complex language well and understands detailed reasoning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Competent User</td>
<td>Has generally effective command of English, despite some misunderstandings. Can use and understand fairly complex language, particularly in familiar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Modest User</td>
<td>Has partial command of English, coping with overall meaning in most situations, although many mistakes will be made.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Limited User</td>
<td>Basic competence in familiar situations. Is not able to use complex language.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Extremely Limited User</td>
<td>Conveys and understands only general meaning in very familiar situations. Frequent breakdowns in communication occur.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Intermittent User</td>
<td>Only very basic understanding of English, with great difficulty in understanding of written and spoken English.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Non User</td>
<td>No ability to speak English beyond possibly a few isolated words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>No test</td>
<td>No assessable information provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Medical Arrangements

Except for pre-existing medical or dental conditions, medical, optical or dental treatment provided by the British Armed Forces are covered by fees charged. There is therefore no charge for such treatment except for supply of spectacles, dental bridges or dental appliances and prescription charges. Dependents are not covered by this concession, unless it is covered under the terms of a Memorandum of Understanding. Any student whose course lasts less than six months, unless covered by a reciprocal agreement, will have to pay for any NHS (or state) hospital treatment they receive. Accident and Emergency services alone are provided free of charge. Students from EU nations are advised to bring their European Health Insurance Card (EHIC). As a rule, dependants receive the same status as the student in this case. If dependants are accepted for registration by a GP, they are entitled to the same service as UK nationals. Students whose course lasts longer than six months are fully entitled to NHS hospital treatment at no charge. As a rule, dependants receive the same status as the student in this case. After 12 months in UK, all are entitled to free NHS treatment.

Security

Governments MUST provide CERTIFICATES OF SECURITY AND ASSURANCE for their students. The certificates advise the level of clearance granted to the student for receipt of his own national information and give an assurance that any UK information passed to the student will be protected. This should be sent at least 2 months before the commencement of the training. A blank certificate is attached to the LOTA as Annex C. It should be noted, that students will be given access to information and material, only up to the security grading authorised by the MOD, for the particular training for which they have been accepted.
Passports and Visas

Passport Certification
Students must ensure that the following certificate (obtainable from British Embassies/Consulates abroad) is inserted into passports: ‘Alien’s exemption from registration whilst attending long military courses in the UK’ (Statutory Instrument No 1554/1958 HM Secretary of State.)

Letter from Defence Attaché/Adviser
This should outline the location and duration of the training. Students may be required to produce this letter for identification on entry into their Training Establishment. Defence Attachés/Advisers can obtain an example letter from our website.

Visas
Requirements for International students to enter the UK will depend on their nationality and length of stay. Failure to obtain and present appropriate documentation at the point of entry to the UK may result in a student being delayed or refused entry by a Border Force Officer. Securing of visas for students (where required) is the responsibility of the sending nation and should be arranged with the Foreign & Commonwealth Office visa section in-country. UK Defence Sections will assist and advise their nations on specific requirements as necessary. Comprehensive detail can be found on the UKVI website https://www.gov.uk/government/organisations/uk-visas-and-immigration

Visa Extensions
Should an extension of stay be required (e.g. because of re-coursing etc), it will be the responsibility of the individual (who will have been made aware of the requirement by the Immigration Officer, on arrival in the UK) to apply for a Visa extension. The application is to be forwarded via the appropriate Embassy or High Commission (who will have confirmed the need for the extension with IDT(A)) to:
The Immigration and Nationality Department
Home Office
Lunar House
40 Wellesley Road
Croydon,
Surrey CR9 2BY
0300 123 2241 (Option 4) (within the UK), 0900-1645 hrs GMT
See http://www.homeoffice.gov.uk/ for more information.

Immigration Procedures
During your flight to the UK you may be given an Immigration Form to complete. Keep this form ready to hand in at Immigration Control on your arrival in the UK.
Travel within the United Kingdom

High Commissions and Embassies in London are responsible for meeting and accommodating students on arrival in the UK and for arranging their transport to the Training Establishment in time for the commencement of the course. Similarly, they are responsible for looking after the students during course recesses and on completion of courses and before their return home. As a general rule, students will not be available for return flights to their country before the scheduled end of course date. All students are to be in possession of a valid passport on arrival at their Training Establishment and retain it whilst under training.

Travel to Central London
If you are flying to the UK, it is likely that you will arrive at either London Heathrow Airport (LHR) or Gatwick (LGW). It is your responsibility, and that of your Embassy/High Commission, to arrive at your Training Establishment in time for the start of the training and you will almost certainly need to travel into London for your onward journey. If your London Embassy/High Commission has not arranged transport there are four ways of travelling into London:

Taxi
You should use only an authorised taxi, usually painted black and always having a clearly visible meter. Make sure the driver switches this on before leaving and pay only what is shown on the meter plus any additional charge if you have a lot of luggage. This is expensive, in relation to other methods of travel, and is in the region of £45 from Heathrow and £80 from Gatwick to the centre of London - and costs even more late at night.

Coach
The airports have good coach links into coach/bus stations in Central London. Travelling by coach is good value (approx £10). +44 121 423 8587 (from overseas) or 08705 757747 (within the UK) www.GoByCoach.com click on the link for airport buses.

Tube/Underground Railway
LHR is on the end of the Piccadilly Line. There is a frequent, inexpensive service into London, but the Underground Railway is a complicated system. If you decide to use it you are strongly advised to study a map of the system, displayed on the walls in the station, ensure you know exactly where you are going or else ask the station staff. 0343222 1234 (08:30 to 17:30 hrs GMT Monday to Friday) www.thetube.com click on journey planner.

Rail
Travel by train to Central London from LHR or LGW can be achieved using the Heathrow or Gatwick Express services.

The Heathrow Express is a 15-minute direct train ride (20 minutes from Terminal 5) from LHR to Paddington Station in the centre of London. This service runs every 15 minutes from 0510 - 2340 hrs. 0345 600 1515 (within the UK) www.heathrowexpress.com

The Gatwick Express is a 30 minute direct train from Gatwick to Victoria Station. The service runs every 15 minutes from 0520-0435 hrs. 0345 272 930 (within the UK) www.gatwickexpress.com

There is also a regular train service from Gatwick which takes 30 minutes.

The Stansted Express is a 45 minute train from Stansted Airport to Liverpool Street Station, London via Tottenham Hale. The service runs every 30 minutes between 0500 - 0800 hrs then 1630-2300 hrs and every 15 minutes from 0815 - 1630 hrs. 0345 600 7245 (within the UK) www.stanstedexpress.com

Air Travel
This is quite an expensive method of travel and there are services only between the major cities. For journeys up to 200 miles the train is often quicker.

Rail
There is a good network of services between the main towns and cities particularly for journeys from and into London. Inter-City trains are fast, comfortable and frequent, with a restaurant/buffet service available on most long journeys. For journeys to rural areas, however, trains are less frequent. The rail companies operate a wide range of tickets at varying prices. Always ask at the booking office to find out which is the one best suited to your journey. There are First and Standard classes of travel on most journeys. 03457 484 850 (within the UK)

National Rail Enquiries www.networkrail.com

www.thetrainline.com for purchasing rail tickets in advance.

Bus/Coach
London has an excellent bus service. 0345 222 1234 www.londontransport.co.uk/buses/contact

Other cities and large towns also have good bus services and Tourist Information Offices may be able to provide timetable information. Buses in rural areas can be infrequent. There is also a comprehensive inter-city express coach service which is inexpensive (compared with air and rail). www.GoByCoach.com
Driving

**Car**
Please remember that vehicles in the UK are right hand drive and are driven on the left hand side of the road. Most vehicles available for hire in the UK are stick shift and not automatic transmission, although automatic transmission vehicles may be obtained from the Car Hire Company upon request.

**Driving in the UK as a visitor**
The rules concerning the driving of civilian vehicles in the UK by visitors from overseas are governed by the Driving and Vehicle Licensing Authority. Those rules are summarised below:

**Age**
Minimum age is 17 for cars and motorcycles and 18 for medium vehicles.

**European Licences**
Holders of licences issued in the following countries can drive any vehicle in Great Britain, providing the licence remains valid and the full entitlement of the vehicle being driven is shown on the licence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>All EU Countries and European Economic Area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Austria</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyprus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech Rep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denmark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>France</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gibraltar and Designated Countries**
Holders of licences from the following countries may drive vehicles in the UK on their licence up to 3.5 tonnes and with up to 8 passengers, (European Cat C1 licence equivalent), providing the full licence or driving permit remains valid for up to 12 months from the date of entering UK.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Australia</th>
<th>Gibraltar</th>
<th>Republic of Korea</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Barbados</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Virgin Islands</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>South Africa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>Switzerland</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Falklands</td>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Faroe Islands</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A UK Driving Test must be passed before the year expires, if the driver continues driving in the UK. If the driver is from a country where a reciprocal agreement with the UK exists then the UK driving test will not be required.

**Buying a Vehicle in the UK**
If a student attending British Army training decides to purchase a vehicle whilst in the UK then they must comply with the following British Laws:
- Have valid motor insurance.
- Have valid Road Fund licence (available from Post Offices and online).
- Hold a valid Ministry of Transport Test Certificate (MOT) from an approved testing garage.

**Warning:** The penalties for driving whilst under the influence of alcohol or drugs in the UK are severe.
**Dress**

All students (except those attending Commissioning Courses at Royal Military Academy Sandhurst) are to be in possession of and wear uniforms appropriate to their own Armed Forces and appropriate to the training. This should be outlined in the Joining Instructions for the Training course.

Students must have sufficient clothing to cope with the diverse weather in the UK together with their appropriate rank and cap badges. Where student’s scales of uniform are inadequate they will be allowed to obtain UK uniform clothing on local repayment or Embassies/High Commissions can be invoiced by DBS Liverpool.

**Discipline**

International students in the UK are subject to British Civil and Criminal Law. Accordingly, the appropriate civil authorities will deal with offences committed against the Laws in force. All students will be expected to respect the rules and regulations enforced locally, together with the customs of the British Army. Serious breaches of conduct will be reported to the national authority via the originating authority.

**Security**

Students staying in UK Ministry of Defence establishments are to obey the Security Regulations set out in the Standing Orders and other notices of the Training Establishment. A student possessing a camera is to report the fact to the Unit Security Officer on arrival. Depending on local security regulations, he may be permitted to do one of the following:

- Retain the camera in the unit.
- Be required to surrender the camera for the duration of the stay or until a permit for its retention is granted.
- Be required to keep it outside the unit.

However, be aware that it is forbidden to photograph, without authority, any military equipment, building or installation or reproduce them in the form of sketches, painting or models of any kind.

**Leave/vacation**

Course lengths quoted in offer letters may include leave periods. During this time the Training Establishment may close and Messing and Accommodation facilities may not be available. During such periods it is the responsibility of the national authorities to make alternative arrangements for the student. Where International students are attending long courses, the dates of main leave periods may be obtained from the appropriate IDT(A) desk officer upon request before the course commences.

Requests for compassionate leave are to be referred to the training unit and then IDT(A) who will liaise with the Embassy/High Commission of the student.

**Public Holidays**

Unfortunately it is impractical to observe International public holidays as there are so many students from different countries training with the British Army. It is therefore customary for International students to observe British Army rules and regulations concerning UK public holidays, weekend and seasonal leave.

**Religious Festivals**

During religious festivals it is recognised that there is normally a requirement for certain students to meet the obligations of their faith. When these obligations interfere with training it is expected that students will obtain religious dispensation from the appropriate authorities. In particular, this is because students who are fasting may be unable to give full attention to instruction or be able to participate in physical activity required by the course and as such they should be authorised to eat and drink normally. Time off for prayer is not normally given and national authorities (particularly Embassy/High Commission staff in the UK) are aware of this.
Dietary Requirements
The training establishment should be informed, before the course commences, if the student has a specific dietary requirement (e.g. vegetarian or religious). The student should also inform the Sergeant Major in charge of the course and the Mess staff upon arrival at the course to avoid any problems in this area.

Accommodation
Students should, whenever possible, live in the Service accommodation provided. When Service accommodation is not available, the Training Establishment may make arrangements for private accommodation to be used or the national representative in UK will be advised to make alternative arrangements for accommodation, keeping IDT(A) informed. Unaccompanied students may choose to live in private accommodation at their own expense, but only with the permission of their Embassy/High Commission and of the Training Establishment’s Commanding Officer.

Accommodation Of Families
With the exception of those attending certain long courses (over 6 months), overseas students are not entitled to MOD married accommodation (married quarters). There are, however, some occasions when married quarters may be made available. In such cases the Service Attaché/Adviser handling the application should forward to the appropriate unit, in accordance with Joining Instructions, details of all personnel who require a married quarter. Such application for quarters must be received at least 2 months before the start of the course.

International students will not be allocated married quarters for a course less than 6 months in duration or if they are single or married but unaccompanied. If a student is not allocated a married quarter and still requires his family to be with him, he should travel to the United Kingdom alone. The student will then be required to make his own arrangements to secure private accommodation, obtain the approval of his Commanding Officer to live in his chosen accommodation, and then send for his family. Unfortunately, the MOD has neither the facilities nor the staff to assist in finding private rented accommodation.

Pay
Responsibility for issuing pay and travelling allowances for students rests with the student’s Embassy/High Commission. Exceptionally, the Training Unit Admin Officer will arrange to pay the student, provided he has the Embassy/High Commission’s prior authority and a cheque for the required amount made payable to the MOD Public Account. If the student wishes to open a bank account in the UK the Training Unit Admin Officer will advise.

Travel Tickets
Railway tickets will normally only be issued for travel if it is a necessary and integral part of the training. Railway tickets can occasionally be issued under other circumstances but the cost of the ticket will be recouped from the originating authority via DBS in Liverpool.

Personal Or Domestic Problems
Students should inform the British Training Establishment of any matters of ill health, confirmation of flight, arrangements at the end of training etc. The Establishments will then deal directly with the appropriate Embassy or High Commission in London. Establishments will also contact the student’s London based Embassies/High Commissions directly on more serious matters arising outside normal office hours when a delay might prove embarrassing or injurious. IDT(A) will then be informed at the beginning of the next working day.

All communications on delicate, disciplinary or potentially controversial subjects or on matters to do with new or additional training, should always be addressed to IDT(A).
Monitoring Of Progress
Throughout training, students’ progress is monitored by means of assessments. These may be either in the form of end of phase examinations, assessments of exercises, or narrative reports throughout training phases by course instructors. The purpose of such monitoring is to assess the students’ progress under training, their comprehension of the subject being taught and, ultimately, their ability to reach the course standards.

Interim/Progress Reports
Training units will, where appropriate to the course, issue reports recording the students’ progress under training. In instances of poor student progress, reports will be submitted to IDT(A) for onward transmission to the National Authority.

Unsatisfactory Progress
The continuous monitoring of students throughout training enables instructors and training staffs to identify those students who are having problems meeting course standards. In such cases the training authority will counsel students and, if necessary or appropriate, may give additional tuition. At the time such problems are encountered, the training authority will warn IDT(A) who will advise the Originating Authority accordingly. Should a student continue to fail IDT(A) will discuss with the training authority the most appropriate course of action and advise the Originating Authority accordingly. For some courses it may be possible for students to repeat phases of training. Ultimately, however, students who fail to meet the necessary standards after the actions described above, may be withdrawn from training and returned to their Embassy/High Commission.

After Training
Final Mess Bill
Students must ensure that their final personal Mess bills (e.g. for cigarettes, confectionery, drinks, telephone calls and extra food consumed in canteens and clubs and mandatory charges, such as mess subscriptions) are settled in cash before leaving the training establishment.

End Of Course Reports
At the end of training a course report will be produced for all students. These reports will detail the student’s performance on the course and will, generally, include a narrative by the Instructor or Course Director detailing particular points of interest, e.g. strengths and weaknesses. International students are generally expected to reach the same standards as their UK counterparts and are assessed accordingly. Training authorities will qualify assessments where International students could not be expected to meet the UK standards e.g. due to unfamiliarity with equipment. End of Course reports may also include recommendations on a student’s suitability for further training with the British Army.

External Examinations
International students sometimes express a wish to improve their academic qualifications by studying for and taking UK examinations which are not a part of their course. Usually, there is no objection to this provided the Officer in charge of the course agrees that the extra study involved will not adversely affect the student’s performance. The student’s National Authority must then provide written agreement to this and also accept responsibility for the repayment of the examination fees to the MOD. Alternatively, the student may pay his own examination fees to the Establishment in which he is being trained.
ARTD / Army UK Training Locations

ASBM & HD Edinburg, EH1 3LA

AACEN, Sch of Inf Drumming Wing
Colditz, DL9 3PS

DST Lascelles, HG17 7LX

RAF Cranwell, NG34 8HG

DAC Melton Mowbray, LE13 0GK

JTS Chicksand, SG17 8PR

DAC RAF Station, HH22 5PS

RNAS Taicnham, NG27 7DU

RSAR Chatham, ME4 4UG

Royal Military Academy
Sandhurst, GU15

Combat Engineering
School Minley, GU17 0LP

DSL Deepcut, GU17 0RW

ASPT Aldershot, GU11 2LJ

DSL Longmoor, GU52 6EU

AAEEN Bovington, BH20 6JA

AACEN Middle Wallop, SO20 8DY

DCPA Worthy Down, SP13 9JD

DCPA Southwick Park, PO15 4JY

HQ ARTD Upavon, SN9 6BE

RSA Larkhill, SP4 9QF

DSCS Blandford, DT11 9BH

GSSD Birmingham, WY71 3JX

IHS Bicester, OX26 1AD

Defence Academy &
DCLC Shrivenham, SN6 8LA

DCLP RAF Marham,
NR23 3LX

WSSC Warminster,
BA12 0QI

HQ ARTD Upavon, SN9 6BE

RSA Larkhill, SP4 9QF

DSCS Blandford,
DT11 9BH

AMCFN Bovington,
BH20 6JA
### Course List

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Op Gp</th>
<th>School</th>
<th>Desk Officer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>International Improvised Explosive Device Disposal (I-IEDD)</td>
<td>Ammunition, Explosive and Search</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DEMS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Maritime Explosive Ordnance Disposal</td>
<td>Ammunition, Explosive and Search</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DEMS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Search Adviser (ISA)</td>
<td>Ammunition, Explosive and Search</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DEMS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Counter-Improvised Explosive Device (C-IED) Train</td>
<td>Ammunition, Explosive and Search</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DEMS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Ground Sign Awareness Instructor Course</td>
<td>Ammunition, Explosive and Search</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DEMS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arms Explosive Search (AES) Dog Handler</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Currency Detection Dog Handler</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Detection Dog Handler (Multi-Purpose)</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennel Assistant</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kennel Manager</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patrol Dog Handler</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Practical Training Assistant (PTA)</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tracker Dog Handler</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle Search Dog handler</td>
<td>Animal Related</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>DAC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Driving and Maintenance (D&amp;M) Instructor</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCO Gunnery Instructor CVR(T) Close Reconnaissance</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental Gunnery Officer Challenger 2 or CVR(T)</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental NCO Gunnery CR2 Instructor</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental NCO Gunnery Instructor</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Leader Armoured</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Troop Leader Formation Reconnaissance</td>
<td>Armour Centre</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Commander (BC) Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Commanders (Close Support)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Battery Commanders (General Support)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire Support Team Commander (FST Comd)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunner Career Course (Find/Protect) (GCC (F/P))</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gunner Career Course (Close Support) (GCC (CS))</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Full Spectrum Targeting (FSpec)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Full Spectrum Targeting (FSpecT).</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tactical Targeting and Intelligence Course (TTIC)</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Young Officer Artillery</td>
<td>Artillery</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>RSA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chef (Basic)</td>
<td>Catering</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Food Services wing</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food Service Officer</td>
<td>Catering</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Food Services wing</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior Officers Tactics Awareness Course (JOTAC)</td>
<td>Officer Education</td>
<td>RMAS Gp</td>
<td>JSC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined Arms Tactics Course (CATC)</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>RATD</td>
<td></td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brigade Commanders’ Programme NATO Only (BCP)</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>RATD</td>
<td></td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Role Recce Commanders’ Course (LRRCC)</td>
<td>ARMCCN</td>
<td>RATD</td>
<td></td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For Courses Starting After 1 April 2017*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Op Gp</th>
<th>School</th>
<th>Desk Officer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jungle Warfare Instructors Course (Brunei) (JWIC)</td>
<td>Jungle</td>
<td>SCHNIF</td>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Tracking Instructors' Course (Brunei) (MTIC)</td>
<td>Jungle</td>
<td>SCHNIF</td>
<td>IBS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brigade Legal Officers Course (BLOC)</td>
<td>Judiciary</td>
<td>OPLAW</td>
<td>Warminster</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assistant Trials Managers</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Radar Systems</td>
<td>University Courses</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Simulation - Introduction</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Failure of Structural Materials</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Weapon Technology</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laser Safety</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Communications</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Electronic Warfare</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Operational Analysis Appreciation</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuclear Effects</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Trials Management</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapons, Ordnance, Munitions and Explosives (WOME) Safety (Awareness)</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weapons, Ordnance, Munitions and Explosives (WOME) Safety (Intermediate)</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems Engineering for Defence Capability MSc/PgDip/PgCert</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course No: 402/029</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Acquisition Management MSc/PgDip/PgCert</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Leadership MSc/PgDip/PgCert</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Simulation and Modelling MSc/PgDip/PgCert 7:17</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives Ordnance Engineering MSc/PgDip 7:18</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Global Security MSc</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gun Systems Design MSc</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Security MSc/PgDip/PgCert</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Electronic Systems Engineering MSc/PgDip</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Vehicle Technology MSc</td>
<td>Post Grad Ed</td>
<td>DACMT</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranfield research programmes lead to degrees in PhD, Executive DBA, EngD, MPhil or MSc by Research</td>
<td>Research Degrees</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cranfield University offer a wide variety of short courses in Defence and Security, Aerospace, Manufacturing as well as other areas.</td>
<td>Cranfield University Short Courses</td>
<td>Cranfield University</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Arms Advanced Drill Instructor</td>
<td>Drill</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Arms Basic Drill Instructor</td>
<td>Drill</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Basic Drill Instructor</td>
<td>Drill</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drum Drill Major</td>
<td>Drill</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Staff Car Driver</td>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Transport Manager</td>
<td>Driving</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerk Of Works (Construction)</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerk Of Works (Electrical)</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Op Gp</td>
<td>School</td>
<td>Desk Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clerk Of Works (Mechanical)</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Engineer (Bricklayer and Concreter) Class R 10:4</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>RSME Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Engineer (Electrician)</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>RSME Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Engineer (Fitter General) Class 2</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>RSME Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Engineer (Plant Operator Mechanic) Class 2</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>RSME Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Plant Foreman</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional Engineer Training (Civil) MSc</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE Troop Commander</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>PW Chatham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demolition Safety Officer</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>REWW Minley</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Junior Commanders Course</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>REWW Minley</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Successful Programmes (MSP) Commanders Course</td>
<td>Engineering</td>
<td>RSME</td>
<td>REWW Minley</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Arms Basic Bookkeeper</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Worthy Down</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fund Manager</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Worthy Down</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental Accountant</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Worthy Down</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regimental Administrative Officer</td>
<td>Administration</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>Worthy Down</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Arms Skill At Arms Instructor</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infantry Warrant Officer</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Live Firing Tactical Training (LFTT)</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platoon Commander Battle Course</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platoon Sergeant Battle Course</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mortar Platoon Commander Course</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JAVELIN Platoon Commander/2 IC</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sniper</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Basic Tactics Instructors Course (IBTIC)</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Urban Operations Course (IUOC)</td>
<td>Infantry</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>SWS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Imagery Analysis 13:1</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Chicksands</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Intelligence Director 13:2</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Chicksands</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Intelligence Analysis Training Course (IIATC) 13:3</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Chicksands</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Imagery Analysis Course (IIAC) 13:4</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Chicksands</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSc In Geospatial Intelligence (RE (Geo) Officers Course)</td>
<td>Intelligence</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Chicksands</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Advanced Command &amp; Staff Course (ACSC)</td>
<td>Staff</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>JSCSC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase A</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>DCLC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase B</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>DCLC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RAMAS) Eng Lang Trg (ELT) Phase A</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>DCLC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RAMAS) Preparatory Course. Phase B</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>DCLC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Category</td>
<td>Op Gp</td>
<td>School</td>
<td>Desk Officer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bespoke Military English Courses (Army)</td>
<td>Language</td>
<td>Def Ac</td>
<td>DCLC</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Logistics Officers’ Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Joint Service Movements Staff Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Movement Control Officers Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Officers Petroleum Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consignment Tracking Unit Operator (CTUO)</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dangerous Goods by Air (CAA Accredited)</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dangerous Goods Surface</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Logistic Management Course (DLMC)</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Logistics Staff Course (DLSC)</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives Authorised Representatives</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managers and Supervisors Fuels &amp; Lubricants Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Officers’ Movements Training (OMT)</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Basic Training Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supply Specialist Ocean Terminal Course</td>
<td>Logistics</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DLS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Musician Foundation</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>RSME Gp</td>
<td>RMSM Twickenham</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piper Class 1</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piper Class 2</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Piper Class 3</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipe Majors’ Course</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drummer (Highland) Class 3</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 1 Drummer / Drum Major</td>
<td>Music</td>
<td>SCHINF</td>
<td>ASBM&amp;HD Edinburgh</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Photographer Course 18:1</td>
<td>Photography</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>DSOP</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Media Operations Photographer Course 18:2</td>
<td>Photography</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>DSOP</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Specialist Basic Camera Handling Course (Army)</td>
<td>Photography</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>DSOP</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All Arms Physical Training Instructor (AAPTI)</td>
<td>Physical Training</td>
<td>ITG</td>
<td>ASPT</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Royal Army Physical Training Corps Instructor Course</td>
<td>Physical Training</td>
<td>ITG</td>
<td>ASPT</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical Training Instructor Re-qualification</td>
<td>Physical Training</td>
<td>ITG</td>
<td>ASPT</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Protection</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>CPU</td>
<td>PM Army</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crime Scenes Investigation (previously Military Police Scenes Of Crime Officer)</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DSPG</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L2 Investigations (previously Military Police Investigations)</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DSPG</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L3 Investigations (previously Military Police Special Investigations)</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DSPG</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Police Officer</td>
<td>Police</td>
<td>DCLPA</td>
<td>DSPG</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regular Army Commissioning Course</td>
<td>Commissioning</td>
<td>RMAS Gp</td>
<td>RMAS</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army Survey (Master of Science (MSc) in Geo Spatial Intelligence) 22:1</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Hermitage</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) Advanced User 22:2</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Hermitage</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) User</td>
<td>Survey</td>
<td>JITG</td>
<td>Hermitage</td>
<td>SO3 IDT(A) 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### International Improvised Explosive Device Disposal (IEDD)

**Course No: 0029b**

**Aim of Course**

To train international EOD operators in UK Defence's Tactics, Techniques & Procedures (TTPs) relating to Improvised Explosive Device Disposal (IEDD).

**Outline of Syllabus**

- **Week 1**
  Covers all the theoretical aspects of IEDD together with the introduction and practical use of all current IEDD equipment used in the British Army.

- **Week 2**
  Students are given realistic IEDD scenarios and are expected to carry out render safe procedures with supervision and guidance. This week is not assessed.

- **Week 3**
  Simulated IEDs are deployed in realistic scenarios within a multi-million pound IEDD specific training area. All scenarios are based on real incidents; if possible from the student’s country of origin, and in every case the scenarios are actual IED incidents, which have, occurred somewhere in the world within the last 24 months.

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Officers and Senior Non Commissioned</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Previous training in IEDD or experience of Explosive Ordnance Disposal.</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
<td>Certificate of attendance only.</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

Certificate of attendance only.
International Maritime Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD)
Course No: 0710

Aim of Course
To provide Basic to Advanced level familiarisation training on EOD equipment and procedures employed during maritime and tidal Mine Counter Measure (MCM) tasks. The course emphasis will be on techniques and procedures most applicable to littoral EOD operations. Completion of the course should enable personnel to understand and execute all phases associated with Mine Investigation and Exploitation (MIE) tasks.

Outline of Syllabus
- Basic explosive theory.
- Description of Land Service Ammunition (LSA) to include projectiles, mortars, rockets, grenades and air dropped weapons (ADW).
- Description of underwater Naval Weapons to include mines, torpedoes and associated fuses.
- Reconnaissance procedures on land and in poor visibility.
- Use of applicable MCM EOD equipment.
- Demolition techniques training: surface, low order, shape charges and explosive stripping.
- Render safe procedures.
- Exploitation technique and procedures.

Remarks
The course incorporates a live demolitions phase at SHOEBURYNESS for 3 days of land-based demolitions training on various explosive exploitation and low-order techniques. The Naval Training Area at BICESTER encompasses a shipboard trainer, a 7m deep man-made lake with over 30 items of ordnance including naval mines, torpedoes and depth charges.

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Senior Non Commissioned Officers and Officers | IELTS Band 6. Trainees should be experienced in Maritime EOD operations in their own nation. All trainees must be trained in basic explosive handling procedures and be competent to perform tasks in arduous conditions and adverse weather. Students MUST arrive with appropriate uniform items to work in these conditions as none will be provided. | 4 weeks | Certificate of attendance only. | 1 course per year
## International Search Advisers (ISA)

**Course No: 8860**

### Aim of Course

To train international students as Search Advisers. The course teaches the student to conduct a Threat Assessment, plan and execute low-risk searches and operate Search equipment using appropriate techniques. On completion, students will be able to contribute to building a safe and secure environment, combat extremist and crime, in support of the maintenance of the rule of law.

### Outline of Syllabus

The course covers the following subjects:

- Intensive instruction on intermediate search procedures and documentation
- International terrorist threat and methods of attack
- All aspects of search planning, including the conduct of threat assessments and the search estimate process.

The planning of various types of search including:

- Large-scale venues
- Area
- Vehicles
- Routes
- Aircraft
- Buildings
- The use and maintenance of relevant current British In-service search equipment.

### Remarks

Instruction Training is delivered by subject matter expert Officers and Senior Non-Commissioned Officers who have operational Search experience in all theatres. The latest technology and methods are utilised. Overseas students are fully integrated into the course and will gain a thorough understanding of British Military ethos and Search doctrine.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
<td>Certificate of attendance only.</td>
<td>3 courses per year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# International Counter - Improvised Explosive Device (C-IED) Trainer

**Course No: 4902**

**Aim of Course**

To provide international instructors with the knowledge and skills required to deliver unit-level C-IED training.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The candidate will be instructed in the following C-IED disciplines in accordance with current UK military doctrine:

- IED Threat Assessment.
- Person Search.
- Vehicle Search.
- Forensics.
- Route Check.
- Area /Building Rummage.
- Compound Search.
- CIED Actions-on.
- Search Documentation.
- Hand Held Metal Detector.

**Remarks**

Trainees will receive theory and practical training in procedures and techniques used to counter the IED threat. Lessons are roughly split 70% - 30% theory to practical, meaning a large portion of the course is spent in the classroom. The course culminates in a series of theory tests and individual teach-back lessons delivered to the other students. The teach back lessons demonstrate the ability of the student to relate their theoretical knowledge and apply it in an instructional scenario.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sgt-Maj</td>
<td>IELTS Band 6. Students should hold a Parent Nation instructors qualification.</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>International students will receive either a Pass Certificate or a Certificate of Attendance depending on results.</td>
<td>3 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### International Ground Sign Awareness Instructor

**Course No: 4901**

#### Aim of Course
To train international personnel in the knowledge and skills required to instruct Ground Sign Awareness (GSA) techniques and procedures in all environments.

#### Outline of Syllabus
The candidate will be instructed in the following GSA disciplines in accordance with current UK military doctrine:
- Basics of tracking.
- Facts and Deductions.
- Urban GSA.
- Night GSA.
- Basic Counter-Explosive Ordnance.

#### Remarks
Trainees will receive theory and practical training in procedures and techniques used in the skill of GSA. Lessons are roughly split 60% - 40% practical to theory meaning a large portion of the course is spent outside. Students are tested to the same standard as the UK course variant.

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sgt-Maj</td>
<td>IELTS Band 6. Students should hold a Parent Nation instructors qualification.</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>Students are assessed to the same standard as UK personnel. International students will receive either a Pass Certificate or a Certificate of Attendance depending on results.</td>
<td>2 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**DEMS Bicester**
## Arms Explosive Search (AES) Dog Handler

**Course No:** 435/008

### Aim of Course

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational AES Dog Handler.

### Outline of Syllabus

On completion of the course, the dog handler will be capable of:

- Maintaining a close working relationship with a trained AES dog
- Advising a Search Team Commander of the correct procedures for the employment of an AES dog under various operational situations
- Employ the dog to search, find and indicate the presence of arms, ammunition, explosives and related items
- Recognising common terrorist booby traps, weapons and explosives
- Operating an AES dog to detect and clear all types of buildings (occupied and unoccupied), outside areas including route clearances, vehicles, aircraft, shops etc
- Completing reports and understanding safety precautions
- Recognise the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain the dog at a high standard of operational efficiency.

### Remarks

The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries to IDT(A).

**Related Course:**
Patrol Dog Handler’s Course.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Experience in basic dog handling.</td>
<td>15 weeks</td>
<td>A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful students</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Currency Detection Dog Handler

**Course No: 435/051**

**Aim of Course**

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Currency Detection Dog Handler.

**Outline of Syllabus**

On completion of training, the Currency Detection Dog Handler will be capable of:

- Maintaining a close working relationship with a trained Currency Detection Dog
- Stating the regulations and safety precautions relating to searching
- Employing the dog to search, find and indicate the presence of hidden currency
- Assessing an operational situation and advising the employing agency on whether or not the dog can be usefully employed
- Operating a Currency Detection Dog in searches for hides and in buildings, all types of vehicles, ships, aircraft, outside areas and personal possessions
- Interpreting dog behaviour and reactions whilst searching for currency
- Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain his dog at a high standard of operational efficiency.

**Qualification gained**

A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful students.

**Remarks**

The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries on this to IDT(A).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Experience in basic dog handling.</td>
<td>9 weeks</td>
<td>A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful students</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DAC Melton Mowbray
Drug Detection Dog Handler (Multi-Purpose)
Course No: 435/065

Aim of Course
To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Multi-Purpose Drugs Detection Dog Handler.

Outline of Syllabus
On completion of training, the Drugs Detection Dog Handler will be capable of:
• Maintaining a close working relationship with a trained Drugs Detection Dog
• Stating the regulations and safety precautions relating to the storage, handling and use of controlled drugs
• Employing the dog to search, find and indicate the presence of cannabis and its derivatives, heroin, cocaine, amphetamines and their derivatives (and currency if required)
• Recognising cannabis, heroin, cocaine and amphetamines by sight and smell
• Assessing an operational situation and advising the employing agency on whether or not the dog can be usefully employed
• Operating a Drugs Detection Dog in searches for controlled drugs’ hides and ancillary equipment in buildings, all types of vehicles, ships, aircraft, outside areas, personal possessions (e.g. luggage) and pedestrians and passengers
• Interpreting dog behaviour and reactions whilst searching for drugs
• Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
• Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain the dog at a high standard of operational efficiency.

Remarks
This course replaces the Passive and Proactive Drugs Detection Dog Handler.
The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries to IDT(A).
Related Course: Patrol Dog Handler’s Course.

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks | IELTS level 6. Fluency in written and spoken English. Experience in basic dog handling. | 9 weeks | A pass certificate is awarded to successful students | 4 courses per year
## Kennel Assistant

**Course No:** 435/019

### Aim of Course

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to carry out the duties of a kennel assistant in a working dog section.

### Outline of Syllabus

On completion of the course the kennel assistant will be capable of:
- Maintaining a kennel, the kennel area and kennel equipment in a clean and tidy condition
- Walking and exercising dogs under control and carrying out basic obedience
- Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Administering and recording veterinary treatments as directed
- Understanding the health and safety regulations regarding dog sections
- Restraining and manipulating a dog for veterinary inspection and treatment.

### Rank Range

Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks

### Entry Standards

IELTS level 6. A reasonable level of physical fitness.

### Duration

5 days

### Qualifications gained

As required

### Frequency

As required
### Kennel Manager
**Course No: 435/011**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Experience in basic dog handling. A reasonable level of physical fitness.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an efficient and effective kennel manager.

**Outline of Syllabus**

On completion of the course the kennel manager will be capable of:
- Supervising the maintenance of a kennel section, the kennel area and kennel equipment in a clean and tidy condition
- Supervising obedience with trained handlers and dog, both leashed and unleashed
- Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Demonstrating the health and safety requirements required for managing a dog section
- Carrying out all the procedures for taking a sick or injured dog to a veterinary officer
- Completing all the relevant documentation for the running of the dog section
- Advising management on the employment of dogs within the Unit
- Conducting all forms of continuation training to maintain the dog teams at a high level of operational efficiency.

**Remarks**

Related Course: Patrol Dog Handler’s Course.
Patrol Dog Handler
Course No: 435/007

Aim of Course
To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Patrol Dog Handler.

Outline of Syllabus
On completion of the course the dog handler will be capable of:
- Maintaining the dog, kennel, the kennel area and kennel equipment in a clean, healthy and tidy condition
- Carrying out obedience with a trained dog both leashed and unleashed
- Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Patrolling continuously for at least 3 hours in all weather conditions with the dog at heel
- Interpreting the dog’s behaviour and “reading” its silent indication of the presence of an intruder at a minimum distance of 300 metres in good weather and 50 metres in bad weather
- Demonstrating the correct challenge, release and arrest procedures for apprehending an intruder with the aid of the dog
- Controlling the dog whilst carrying out the search and escort of an intruder
- Conducting all forms of continuation training to maintain his dog at a high level of operational efficiency.

Remarks
The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries on this to IDT(A).

Rank Range
The course is open to Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks

Entry Standards
IELTS level 6. A reasonable level of physical fitness.

Duration
2 weeks

Qualifications gained

Frequency
12 courses per year
## Police Dog Handler

**Course No: 435/030**

### Aim of Course

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Police Dog Handler.

### Outline of Syllabus

On completion of the course, the dog handler will be capable of:

- Applying basic canine husbandry.

**Patrol**

- Patrolling continuously for at least 3 hours
- Interpreting the dog’s behaviour and “reading” its silent indication of the presence of an intruder in all weather conditions
- Demonstrating the correct procedures for apprehending an intruder with a dog
- Controlling the dog whilst searching and escorting an intruder.

**Search**

- Using the dog to search open areas to find foreign objects
- Using the dog to find an intruder hiding in a building.

**Tracking**

- Using the dog to cast an open area in search of tracks
- Following a track in reasonable weather conditions
- Recognising different types of dog evasion
- Conducting continuation training to maintain the dog at a high standard of operational efficiency.

### Remarks

- The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries on this to IDT(A).
- Related Course: Patrol Dog Handlers Course.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Fluency in written and spoken English. Experience in basic dog handling.</td>
<td>9 weeks (45 working days)</td>
<td>A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful students</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Practical Training Assistants - PTA

Course No: 435/058

DAC Melton Mowbray

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to assist dog trainers and handlers in man-work training techniques for protection dogs. | On completion of the course, the dog handler will be capable of:  
- Applying general safety precautions when carrying out man work exercises for protection dogs  
- Demonstrate the ability to use all types of baiting equipment  
- Assist a Patrol Dog handler in the training and testing of Patrol in various man work scenarios  
- Advise the dog handler on the most beneficial man work continuation training for his dog  
- Select and set up an area for wind scenting, pick up and indication training  
- Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain the Unit dogs at a high standard of operational efficiency. | The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries on this to IDT(A). Related Course: Patrol Dog Handler’s Course. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Experience in basic dog handling.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful students</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tracker Dog Handler
Course No: 435/021

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an</td>
<td>On completion of the course, the dog handler will be capable of:</td>
<td>The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operational Tracker Dog Handler.</td>
<td>• Maintaining a close working relationship with a trained Tracker dog</td>
<td>refer any queries on this to IDT(A). Related Course: Patrol Dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Assessing an operational situation and advise the employing agency as to</td>
<td>Handler’s Course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>whether or not his dog can be employed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Using the dog to cast an open area in search of tracks.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Interpreting the dog’s behaviour and reactions, and advising the Team</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Commander of results</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Identifying and following a track under all reasonable weather conditions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Recognising different methods employed in Dog Evasion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>any abnormalities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Completing reports and understanding safety precautions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain his dog</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>at a high standard of operational efficiency.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Tracker Dog Handler.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6.</td>
<td>6 weeks</td>
<td>A Pass Certificate is awarded to successful</td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Experience in</td>
<td></td>
<td>students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>basic dog</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>handling.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle Search Dog Handler  
Course No: 435/063

**Aim of Course**

To provide students with the knowledge and skills necessary to become an operational Vehicle Search Dog Handler.

**Outline of Syllabus**

On completion of the course, the dog handler will be capable of:

- Maintaining a close working relationship with a trained Vehicle Search dog
- Advising a Search Team Commander of the correct procedures for the employment of a Vehicle Search dog under various operational situations
- Employing the dog to search, find and indicate the presence of arms ammunition explosive and associated items
- Recognising common terrorist booby traps, weapons and explosives
- Operating a Vehicle Search dog to detect and clear all types of vehicles
- Controlling the dog to search vehicles at Vehicle Check Points both leashed and unleashed
- Completing reports and understanding safety precautions
- Recognising the basic signs of health, detect signs of sickness and report any abnormalities
- Conducting all forms of continuation training in order to maintain his dog at a high standard of operational efficiency.

**Remarks**

Related courses: Patrol Dog Handlers Course. The Defence Animal Centre can sometimes provide trained dogs. Please refer any queries on this to IDT(A).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private soldiers and all non-commissioned ranks</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Experience in basic dog handling.</td>
<td>4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DAC Melton Mowbray
Driving & Maintenance Instructor
Course No: 408/044
ARMCEN Bovington

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To train Regimental Driver &amp; Maintenance instructors to Army standard of all types of Armoured Fighting Vehicle (AFV) in current (to each Arm) use prior to their appointment as Driver &amp; Maintenance School instructors.</td>
<td>On completion of this course students will be able to: • Teach soldiers Driving &amp; Maintenance up to and including their own arms standard • Carry out additional duties.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Senior Non Commissioned Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 5</td>
<td>55-70 days depending on Arms’ syllabus</td>
<td>Driving &amp; Maintenance School Instructor</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## NCO Gunnery Instructor CVR(T) Close Reconnaissance

**Course No: 408/095**

**ARMCENT Lulworth**

### Aim of Course

To train NCOs to instruct CVR(T) Gunnery and to supervise Live Firing.

### Outline of Syllabus

On completion of this course students will be able to:
- Carry out instruction of a gunnery syllabus by demonstrating instructional skills and conducting turret, weapon and simulator system lessons
- To carry out gunnery continuation training practice period in turret and simulator lessons
- To carry out testing procedures in turret, weapon and simulator systems and supervise AFV Operational Shooting Policy training tests
- Supervise live firing in static firing, crew Fire & Movement Exercise firing and crew field firing.

### Remarks

NCO Gunnery Instructor CVR(T) Close Reconnaissance Course

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance-Corporal to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 5</td>
<td>45 working days</td>
<td>Gunnery Instructor</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>from Armoured Corps and Infantry units</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Regimental Gunnery Officer Challenger 2 or CVR(T)

**Course No: 408/096**

**Aim of Course**

To train officers in all aspects of CR2 or CVR(T) 30mm gunnery.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Advise the Commanding Officer on general gunnery matters, gunnery equipment and capabilities, the best use of training facilities, including ranges, course programming and open range practices
- Assess the standard of instruction and coaching within the Regiment. Instruct on gunnery theory at Crew Gunner level and provide continuation training on gunnery theory at Armoured Fighting Vehicle Commander level
- Plan and conduct unit gunnery continuation training, pre course training and supervise Regimental Class 2 gunnery courses and related trade testing
- Plan and organise a Regimental firing period
- Conduct weapon safety templates.

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant to Captain</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Officers attending should have completed 2 years service.</td>
<td>70 working days</td>
<td>CR2 Regimental Gunnery Officer or CVR(T)</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Regimental NCO Gunnery CR2 Instructor

**Course No: 408/097**

**Aim of Course**
To train NCOs to become CR2 Regimental Gunnery Instructors.

**Outline of Syllabus**
On completion of this course students will be able to:
- Operate and maintain all gunnery training equipment
- Deliver instruction on a Crew Gunner course, carry out continuation training to vehicle commander level, conduct employment testing at Crew Gunner level and carry out coaching and assessing of turret crews during continuation training/open range practices.

**Rank Range**
Lance-Corporal to Corporal from Armoured units

**Entry Standards**
IELTS level 5

**Duration**
60 working days

**Qualifications gained**
CR2 Regimental Gunnery Instructor

**Frequency**
3 courses per year
## Regimental NCO Gunnery Instructor

**Course No: 408/098**

**ARMCEP Lulworth**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train Armoured Corps NCOs to become Armoured Recce Regimental Gunnery Instructors. | On completion of this course students will be able to:  
- Operate 30mm training equipment  
- Deliver instruction on a 30mm crew gunner course  
- Carry out pre course and pre firing training  
- Carry out testing procedures and conduct crew gunner course firing exercises. | |

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance-Corporal to Corporal from Armoured units</td>
<td>IELTS level 5</td>
<td>50 working days</td>
<td>CVR(T) Regimental Gunnery Instructor</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Troop Leader Armoured

**Course No: 408/001**

**ARMCEN Bovington/Warminster**

## Aim of Course

To give newly commissioned Armoured Corps Officers basic training in Main Battle Tank (MBT) gunnery, Driving and Maintenance, Signals and in commanding a Tank Troop, including a practical phase.

## Outline of Syllabus

### Gunnery
- Recognise and identify Armoured Fighting Vehicles (AFV) and aircraft using visual and thermal sighting equipment
- Engagement procedures
- Vehicle servicing
- Troop and crew control.

### Driving and Maintenance
- Operate automotive system
- Administrative Responsibilities of a Troop Leader.

### Signals
- Voice Procedure
- Working a net
- Watch-keeping duties
- Map marking
- Indoor and outdoor Exercises.

### Tactics
- Apply field craft skills
- Prepare Armoured Troop for Operations
- Maintain combat effectiveness
- Identify the threat
- Command an Armoured Troop on Operations.

## Remarks

The course should be followed by a period of practical experience with a view to undertaking the more advanced "Instructors" courses in Driving and Maintenance, Signals or Gunnery.

## Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Lieutenant to Lieutenant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. The student must hold a FULL or PROVISIONAL tracked Driving Licence and a current effective Driving Licence.</td>
<td>25 weeks</td>
<td>Troop Leader Armoured</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
# Troop Leader Formation Reconnaissance

**Course No:** 408/005

**ARMCEN Bovington**

## Aim of Course

To give newly commissioned Armoured Corps Officers basic training in Combat Reconnaissance (Recc) Vehicle Gunnery, Driving and Maintenance, Signals and in commanding a RECCE Troop, including a practical phase.

## Outline of Syllabus

### Gunnery
- Target Engagement
- Equipment Maintenance
- Safety Procedures
- Troop and Crew Control.

### Driving and Maintenance
- Combat Reconnaissance Vehicle details
- Servicing
- Driving and Commanding by Day and Night
- Administrative Responsibilities of a Troop Leader.

### Signals
- Call signs
- Reports
- Trace and Map Marking
- VHF Antennae Sitting
- Voice Procedure
- Electronic Warfare
- Indoor and Outdoor Exercises.

### Tactics
- Analysis of the Threat
- Medium Reconnaissance Vehicle Tactics
- Vehicle Recognition
- Receipt and Issues of Order
- Nuclear Biological and Chemical Defence.
- Introduction to the All Arms Battle Group.
- Field Training Exercise.

## Remarks

The course should be followed by a period of practical experience with a view to undertaking the more advanced “Instructors” courses in Driving and Maintenance, Signals or Gunnery.

## Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Lieutenant to Lieutenant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. The student must hold a FULL or PROVISIONAL tracked Driving Licence.</td>
<td>21 weeks.</td>
<td>Troop Leader</td>
<td>3 courses per year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Gunnery Staff Officers Course (Close Support)  
Course No: G13  
Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To develop the technical knowledge and skills of selected officers, in order to prepare them for increased technical and training responsibility either at regimental duty or within Instructor Gunnery appointments.</td>
<td><strong>Cranfield university.</strong> PG Cert in Gun System Design, providing technical understanding of Fundamentals of Ballistics and Gun Design. <strong>Technical aspects of CS capabilities.</strong> Understand and brief the capability of equipment, detailed technical understanding of current and future Close support capabilities, including Mortars, Artillery, Precision Fires and Air Defence. <strong>Artillery tactics and doctrine.</strong> Explore the levels within the doctrine framework, analyse and provide SME on Artillery tactics, looking at the deep battle, indirect fire battle and how CS OS supports the offensive, defensive and stabilising actions. <strong>Manage training delivery.</strong> Students teach both practical and theory lessons on all phases of the course, managing and supporting the delivery. <strong>Conduct safety/OIC practice.</strong> Conduct range planning and safety, enabling the students to conduct OIC practice and range planning throughout the course.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | • Provide SME on technical aspects of CS OS capabilities.  
• Provide SME on Artillery tactics.  
• Provide SME on integration of CS OS capabilities.  
• Support the development of current and future CS OS capabilities.  
• Support the TRA/TDA in the management of training.  
• Manage individual training delivery.  
• Manage collective training delivery.  
• Conduct live training exercises.  
• Conduct Joint Fires safety.  
• Evaluate training.  
• Audit training.  
• Support inspections.  
• Support continuous improvements. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OF2 - OF3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5 or equivalent</td>
<td>46 weeks</td>
<td>Instructor in Gunnery (IG) qualification denoting membership of the Gunnery Staff.</td>
<td>one course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artillery Courses

Instructor Gunnery ISTAR/GBAD
Course No: G13A
Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The premier officer course within the Royal Artillery delivers in-depth technical and tactical employment training in order to qualify selected officers as Instructors in Gunnery. Experienced officers (Captains and above) who possess the necessary experience and technical acumen are selected and developed over an 11 month period into subject matter experts who fill demanding instructional, acquisition and command appointments. | The course focuses on 3 main functional areas; the ‘Sensors’, the ‘Shooters’ and the ‘Deciders’. Within these areas, students explore in service capability, studying doctrine and tactics, specific platform technology, the Army’s training system and most importantly how to integrate capability into the Artillery system as well as the Joint or Combined environments. This is underpinned by an in depth study of science technology enabling students to develop a thorough understanding of in service and future capabilities. In addition students study acquisition completing the APMP project management qualification and instructor skills are developed through a Level 5 qualification in Education and Training. Student IGs become the experts in all aspects of exercise and range safety allowing them to create and manage artillery ranges in accordance with current safety regulations. | Modules:-  
• Baseline module  
• Doctrine and Tactics (including planning – BG to Bde)  
• Level 5 Teaching and Learning  
• Science & Technology (aimed at, & taught to AS level)  
• Training Systems  
• GBAD and ISTAR Platform Training  
• Joint Battlespace Management Course  
• GBAD Warfare Officers cse  
• ISTAR Ops Officers cse  
• European exercises |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OF2 - OF3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5.</td>
<td>11 months</td>
<td>As per CS course</td>
<td>1 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Gunnery Career Course (Close Support) (GCC (CS))

**Course No: G02**

**Royal School of Artillery Larkhill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Senior Non Commissioned Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. DIT. Experience of commanding a detachment in a Field Artillery trade.</td>
<td>46 weeks</td>
<td>Successful candidates gain the Qualified Gunnery Instructor (QGI) qualification denoting membership of the Gunnery Staff. This qualification allows them to fill the highest grade Gunnery Staff instructional and staff appointments.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Aim of Course

To develop the professional knowledge and skills of selected WOs and SNCOs in order to prepare them for increased technical and training responsibility at regimental duty and gunnery staff.

### Outline of Syllabus

The Gunnery Career Course (GCC) is the premier course for Royal Artillery Senior Non-Commissioned Officers (SNCOs). Term one focuses on expanding the students’ knowledge of the British Army’s Capstone doctrine, military planning and Battle Group and Brigade level tactics. They also receive a 3 week advanced Artillery Command Systems package, 2 weeks of military Science and Technology instruction and a Virtual Battlefield Simulation course.

In term two students are divided into disciplines according to trade. Those who reign from an ISR background attend the Surveillance, Target and Acquisition training facility at Larkhill where they receive bespoke training on the following ISR capabilities: ASP, MAMBA, LCMR and DH3. The remainder of the students will receive training on the following GBAD capabilities: Rapier FSC, HVM SP, HVM LML and LEAPP. This training is delivered at either the Royal School Artillery or in Thorny Island on the South coast of England. During term two students will also explore future, trade specific capabilities and emerging technologies. To ensure the students receive a higher level of understanding of the capabilities studied, they will conduct numerous Industry and defence visits within the UK and overseas.

Term 3 sees the students deliver an array of projects conducted throughout the course. These include: Defence System Approach to Training, Doctrine and Tactics as well as the planning and execution of a Battlefield Study and Missile Practice Camp. This final term also contains two NATO capability comparison exercises in Germany and Poland. The knowledge gained over the course is tested throughout and culminates with a confirmation live exercise which is designed, planned and delivered by the students.

The Gunnery Careers Course produces high-grade SNCOs with a superior understanding of not only ISR/GBAD artillery, but of the Artillery system of systems.

### Remarks

Students visit either the major UK ranges or overseas ranges in order to run missile practice camps.

The RSA is unable to provide ammunition for overseas students and course costs have been revised accordingly.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant to Warrant Officer who have completed at least 12 years in their particular trade and have been graded as being the top 10% of practitioners in their specific ISR/GBAD specialty</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5, DIT qualified. Experience of commanding an Air Defence Equipment Detachment and a sound knowledge of basic Air Defence procedures. DIT qualified. Experience of commanding a detachment in a STA Artillery trade.</td>
<td>46 weeks</td>
<td>Qualified Gunnery Instructor (QGI) qualification denoting membership of the Gunnery Staff. Level 4 diploma in Education and Training(2), resulting in a high grade professional teaching qualification being awarded.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Fire Support Team Commander (FST Comd)**  
Course No: T02A

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Is to develop the requisite skills and knowledge of selected officers in order that they may perform the tasks of a Fire Support Team Commander (Close Support). | **Supervise/Operate Specialist OP Equipment.** Understand and brief the capability of equipment, including Precision Strike suite, STA equipment (incl radar) and OPV where relevant.  
**Apply the Principles of CS Technical Gunnery.** Encapsulating the Gunnery Problem and focusing on a variety of mission-sets enabling the student to become technically proficient and able to supervise subordinates.  
**Coordinate and Direct Joint Fires.** Primarily concerned with Joint Fires Assets at Coy/Sqn level, students also learn and practice standard and non-standard missions, Fire Planning, and ROE and CD factors.  
**Liaise, Integrate with and Advise the Manoeuvre arm.** Learn capabilities in order to provide advice on OS, FST employability and Risk.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Qualified AFV Comd (armoured students only).</td>
<td>11 weeks</td>
<td>On successful completion officers will be qualified as an FST Comd</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Fire Support Team Level 4 Course
Course No: T09D
Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

Aim of Course
The course aims to develop the requisite skills and knowledge of selected soldiers in order that they may perform the tasks of a Fire Support Team Primary Assistant (Close Support).

Outline of Syllabus
Training Objectives cover the areas detailed below;

- **Supervise/Operate Specialist OP Equipment.** Understand and brief the capability of equipment, including Precision Strike suite, STA equipment (incl radar) and OPV where relevant.
- **Apply the Principles of CS Technical Gunnery.** Encapsulating the Gunnery Problem and focussing on a variety of mission-sets enabling the student to become technically proficient and able to supervise subordinates.
- **Coordinate and Direct Joint Fires.** Primarily concerned with Joint Fires Assets at Coy/Sqn level, students also learn and practice standard and non-standard missions, Fire Planning, and ROE and CD factors.
- **Liaise, Integrate with and Advise the Manoeuvre arm.** Learn capabilities in order to provide advice on OS, FST employability and Risk.
- **Management of Battlespace within a BG AO.** The understanding and employment of assets, including liaison and deconfliction as part of combined arms operations.

Training Objectives (TO’s)/ Performance:
- Recce and Selection of an Observation Post (OP)
- Supervise/Operate Specialist OP Equipment
- Coordinate and Direct Joint Fires
- Apply the Principles of CS Technical Gunnery
- Supervise Artillery Safe System
- Liaise Integrate with and Advise the Manoeuvre Arm
- Management of Battlespace within a BG AO
- Operate within a CS Regiment
- Carry Out Instructor and Mentoring Duties

Remarks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5 A 1 year substantive FST L3.</td>
<td>4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artillery Courses

Battery Commander (BC) Common Module

*Course No: T01*

**Royal School of Artillery Larkhill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The aim of this course is to develop the knowledge and skills of selected RA Officers to carry out duties of a Battery Commander. | **Supervise and understand battery capabilities.** Understand and brief the capability of Battery equipment to include GBAD, ISTAR, Joint Fires integrated into Combined Army Manoeuvre and the requisite support packages required to sustain systems.  
**Maintain unit readiness.** Primarily focuses on maintaining readiness of both the equipment and personnel assigned to the Battery over time.  
**Maintain good order and discipline within the unit.** Review and update on legal matters to ensure good, fair, and timely disciplinary proceedings as they arise. Reduce the need to “re-address” legal matters and ensure compliance.  
**Provide realistic view of Battery.** Address common pitfalls new commander’s may or may not face during the days following assumption of command. Identifies ways and means to assess personnel, systems, and performance more effectively upon assumption of command.  
**Training the Battery.** The delivery and evaluation of realistic training is conducted in accordance with the Defence Systems Approach to Training (DSAT). | Students then attend the Special-to-discipline course either CS or GBAD or ISTAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OF2 – OF3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>2 week course conducted annually (June).</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4:7
**Battery Commanders (Close Support)**

*Course No: T01A*

**Royal School of Artillery Larkhill**

**Aim of Course**

The aim of the BC CS course is to provide newly appointed BCs with CS weapon platform capability updates, qualify as OIC practice, revise on Targeting procedures and the Targeting Directive and undertake intensive BG level Fire Plan training. This course is a mandated training requirement to enable a BC to competently operate in the collective training arena and beyond.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- **Advise the Battlegroup Commander on the Employment of Joint Fires.**
  - Primarily concerned with Joint Fires Assets at BG level, students also
- **Deliver Joint and Multi National Fires.**
  - This covers all aspects of commanding a Tac Group and JFC whilst applying the targeting process and battlespace management at BG level. It also includes counter battery fires and the employment of RA allocated ISTAR Assets as part of the Bde/BG ISTAR Plan.
- **Conduct Indirect Fire Engagements.**
  - The course goes in to detail of how to utilise target acquisition system equipment and conduct precision fires engagements. Sometime is used to further the trainee’s knowledge of conducting close support engagements and directing a battery deployment plan.
- **Apply Joint Fires Training and Safety Procedures.**
  - The trainee will be able to conduct operational safety, plan and conduct Sub Unit training and carry out the duties of OIC practice to a minimum of stage 3.

**Remarks**

The course is purely simulator based and does not incorporate live firing; both weeks are delivered in the RSA at Larkhill. An in-depth knowledge of conducting Joint Fires at Coy level is required.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Artillery Courses**
Artillery Courses

Battery Commander (ISTAR) - Intelligence Surveillance Target Acquisition & Reconnaissance

Course No: TO1E

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

### Aim of Course

To develop the skills and knowledge of selected officers in order to train them to perform the tasks of a Battery Commander (BC).

### Outline of Syllabus

Command the Battery from the STA Coordination centre (STACC). Command a STA Bty, understand and apply BM and devise the CSS plan for the STA Bty.

**Establish the STACC.** Support comd's CF plan, STAP and ICP, advise the comd on the status of STA assets, exercise OPCOM of relevant STA assets, establish sensor-to-shooter 'Quick Fire' links in accordance with EGM, exercise C2 over attached STA assets as directed, contribute to the formulation of EMCON policy, de-conflict battlespace, determine and promulgate the met support plan to STA assets, produce and disseminate Artillery Reserved Area (ARA) and Artillery Manoeuvre Area (AMA) information, allocate Named Area Interest (NAI), Target Area Interest (TAI) and maintain Situation Awareness (SA) of STA assets.

**Deploy STA assets.** Apply the deployment principles, evaluate deployment factors, determine deployment type, conduct the counter fires estimate, initiate the recce process, deploy the Battery, monitor readiness states and plan and manage an ISTAR network.

**Operate within the Bde/Div ISTAR cell.** Coordinate and manage activities of the Bde/Div ISTAR cell, liaise with formation staff, advise on strategic and operational ISR capabilities, advise on the capabilities of in-service STA assets, utilise operational staff work, liaise with legal advisors, apply the UK joint targeting policy, apply measures of effectiveness and battle damage assessment, advise on collateral damage estimate (CDE), advise on the planning considerations of in-service STA assets, extract relevant information from the ATO and advise on En strike and STA capabilities.

### Remarks

#### Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

| Officer-Lieutenant. | IELTS level 5.0 | 5 working days | 1 per year |


Battery Commander (BC) Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD)

Course No: TO1C

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

**Aim of Course**

To develop the skills and knowledge of selected officers in order to train them to train them to perform the tasks of a Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD) Battery Commander (BC).

**Outline of Syllabus**

- **UK GBAD Capabilities.** Students will gain a technical awareness of all UK GBAD weapon systems and Land Environment Air Picture Provision (LEAPP) assets.
- **GBAD Planning.** The students will be updated on the threats currently faced by UK GBAD forces, including briefs from Fixed Wing (FW) and Rotary Wing (RW) pilots. They will then receive training on how to conduct GBAD planning, focusing on the Brigade Air Defence Cell (BADC), the conduct of the GBAD estimate as well as carrying out GBAD table top planning exercises up to and including the deployment of GBAD assets.
- **GBAD Command and Control (C2) and Integration.** Students will be able to understand how the air defence battle is controlled from the Formation Air Defence Cell (FADC) down to the Fire Co-Ordination Cell (FCC) at Battlegroup level, including an insight into GBAD Command Post (CP) procedures. They will also find out how GBAD is integrated into the air and maritime components.
- **GBAD Assurance Processes.** The students will get the opportunity to visit the UK GBAD formation headquarters and gain an understanding on how they assure their GBAD Units. This will include what role the Battery Commander plays in the process.
- **GBAD Range Practices.** The students will gain an understanding on how to plan and conduct GBAD range practices (only for UK GBAD weapon systems). The students will undertake the Officer in Charge (OIC) Practice qualification, which will allow them to conduct Battery missile practice camps.

**Remarks**

- 1 course per year

**Rank Range** | **Entry Standards** | **Duration** | **Qualifications gained** | **Frequency**
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Officer-Lieutenant | IELTS level 5.5 | 2 weeks |  | 1 course per year
Artillery Courses

Joint Battlespace Management Course (JBMC).

Course No: T21

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To improve awareness of the principles of Joint Battlespace Management, including planning and execution, at both the operational and tactical level, in order to prepare officers to fill staff appointments in joint and component headquarters.</td>
<td>Understand battlespace management doctrine. Understanding the content and location of doctrine associated to Battlespace Management (BM), specifically: JDP 3-70, JDP 3-00, JDP 3-62, AFM Vol 1 Pt 11, and AFM Vol 1 Pt 13. Understand the BM role within Joint Action.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the seven dimensions of BM. Understand and demonstrate through planning and execution the ability to conduct BM within the seven dimensions: Maritime, Land, Air, Space, Information, Electromagnetic &amp; Time.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the fundamentals of BM. Understanding and application of a defined battlespace, the principles of BM, the relationships and interfaces between components.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Apply BM procedures. Plan and execute BM within a Joint context, showing evidence of the application of coordination and control, knowledge of the BM Groups, understanding of the initial battlespace conditions, and risk management.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the Air Component command and control procedures. Show an understanding of the Airspace Control Authority, the Joint Air Operations Plan, the Air Operations Directive, and the Master Air Operations Plan. Understand the Airspace Management Tools available to the Joint BM practitioner. Understand the Air Tasking Order and Air Tasking Cycle. Request and execute ACM.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the Maritime Component BM command and control procedures. Understand the maritime perspective to integration of BM within a joint environment, and the role of BM as practiced in 3 Commando Brigade.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the role of Combat Identification (CID) in BM. Understand the process of combining Situational Awareness, Target Identification, and Tactics, Techniques and Procedures to increase the operational effectiveness of weapon systems and reduce the incidence of casualties caused by friendly fire.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Understand the Joint Force Headquarters perspective to BM. Understanding of BM at the operational level, and the frictions, challenges and impact it has on the Joint environment.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR6 - OF4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 times per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artillery Courses

Royal Artillery Staff Officer’s Course
Course No: T22
Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

Aim of Course
To train Offensive Support and ISTAR staff (Officers and Warrant Officers) who operate at formation level to understand and plan the Integration and use of ISTAR and fires (including Air Defence).

Outline of Syllabus

| Remarks | Setting the Context, Find/Protect, and Introduction to Targeting. Provides students with the appropriate context in which a near peer adversary operates and the correct means to counter this threat followed by an introduction to full spectrum targeting methodology. |
| Dynamic Targeting and Combat Engagement. | Delves deeper into targeting methodology and practical exercise leading to the creation of products to include the high payoff target list, high value target list, effects guidance matrix, decision support overlays and intelligence collection plan supported by SMEs from the field. |
| Brigade/Division level Staff Work. | Scenario based training driving students to develop operational staff work to include; OpOrder main body input, specific annexes (ISTAR, Fires, AD) and Battlespace Management graphics. |
| Operational Updates. | Continuation of lessons learnt from current leaders within the field force focussing on operational issues and procedural best practices. Designed to prevent a lack of coordination between entities (ISTAR, Fires, and Battlespace Managers) and enhance execution through a common language culminating in a wargaming exercise following fires Annex and OSW review. |
| Execution and Capstone Exercise. | Implementation of students’ OSW, orders production, logic, and war fighting considerations validating/identifying gaps in their plan of execution. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captains or Warrant Officer equivalent ISTAR and Fires/AD Officers currently serving in or preparing to serve in deployed divisional and brigade HQs</td>
<td>English Language level: IELTS 5.5 or equivalent</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Young Officer Course - Common Module

**Course No:** YO1Z  
**Royal School of Artillery Larkhill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Second Lieutenant/ Lieutenant | IELTS level 5.5  
Completed the Regular or Reserve Commissioning course at the Royal Military Academy Sandhurst or an equivalent course at a foreign military academy. Security cleared in accordance with International Defence Training Manual (JSP 510) and that certificates are sent to SO2(Sy) at the RSA. | 6 weeks  | RA Troop commander          | 3 courses per year |

### Aim of Course

To develop the professional knowledge and skills of junior officers in order to prepare them technically and professionally for their first regimental appointment.

### Outline of Syllabus

Training objectives cover six main areas:

- **Organisation and Deployment.** The heritage, organisation, roles and tactical employment of UK artillery.
- **Roles and Responsibilities of a Royal Artillery Troop Commander.** The administration and management of vehicles, equipment and personnel both in-barracks and on deployment.
- **Technical Training.** The detailed technical understanding of UK artillery systems, including command and control systems. On selection of discipline deeper technical training is undertaken which is pertinent to the chosen discipline.
- **Practical Training.** Students participate in dry and live-firing exercises.
- **Safety.** The competences of range staff, safety staff and unit personnel in the planning control, conduct and safety of live practices involving discipline-specific equipment.

### Remarks

- The course is divided into a Common Module common module is 6 weeks followed by 8 weeks special to discipline followed by 2 weeks at ArmCen.
- The RSA is unable to provide ammunition for overseas students and course costs have been revised accordingly.
Young Officer - Close Support
Course No: YO1A

Upon successful completion of the course qualified students will be able to act as a Command Post Officer (CPO). The CPO is responsible for the efficient operation of the Command Post in response to Calls for Fire. They supervise the computation of ballistic data and relay this information to the Gun Platforms.

Operate within a Close Support Regiment Structure. Understand the mission of a Gun Regiment within the British Army and the structure within a Brigade setting.

Carry out the Duties of a CPO during Deployment. To include the understanding of the tactical picture, deployment and occupation procedures.

Carry out Fire Missions Procedures. Learn and develop technical competence in the computation of firing data using the current in service systems, FCBISA, FCA and MPOD. Includes both simulation and live serials working in the field setting.

Carry out Ammunition Management. Understand correct ammunition handling and procedures.

Manage Battery Equipment. Develop an understanding of the maintenance chain within a Gun Regiment and procedures that need to be completed.

Manage Training. Learn how to develop the soldiers under your command. Design and deliver challenging and relevant training within a Close Support Regimental construct.

Introduction to Ballistics. Conducted at the Defence Academy Shrivenham, an in depth, 3 day study into the history and application of ballistics for artillery.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2Lt Rank or above</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5.</td>
<td>8 weeks</td>
<td>RA-CPO QUAL-ARMY</td>
<td>3 times per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Young Officer - Air Defence**  
*Course No: YO1B*

**Aim of Course**  
To provide the necessary knowledge and experience to qualify a junior officer as an Air Defence Troop Commander in an Air Defence regiment.

**Outline of Syllabus**  
Training objectives cover all technical knowledge and practice to qualify as an Air Defence troop commander.

**Organisation and Deployment.** The organisation, roles and tactical employment of UK Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD) artillery. Identify the key components of the Joint AD environment and the way in which UK GBAD can be fully integrated. Includes both NATO and UK, (Land, Maritime and Air) Command and Control (C2) structures and procedures.

**GBAD Liaison Officer.** The role and responsibilities of the GBAD LO within Division (Div), Brigade (Bde) and Battle Group (BG) to include GBAD current and future planning on operations in support of the commanders mission. To provide the Bde/BG with an AD technical expert whilst on operations.

**Roles and Responsibilities of an Air Defence Troop Commander.** Understanding the management, employment and deployment including C2 of UK GBAD systems.

**Technical Training.** The detailed technical understanding of UK GBAD weapon systems, land/air/maritime integration, air space planning, Battlespace Management (BM) and C2 systems.

**Practical Training.** Students conduct base line weapon system training in sitting and deployment exercises and Brigade level staff planning training to include war gaming and simulation.

**Safety.** The competences of range staff, safety staff and unit personnel in the planning control, conduct and safety of live practices involving discipline-specific equipment.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1Lt / 2Lt or OF-2 (Captain) | IELTS level 5.5  
Completed the Regular or Reserve Commissioning course at the Royal Military Academy Sandhurst or an equivalent course at a foreign military academy. | 8 weeks  |                       | 3 times per year |
### Young Officer - Tactical ISTAR

**Course No: Y01H**

**Royal School of Artillery Larkhill**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Lieutenant/Lieutenant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>8 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

To train train selected offices to carry out the duties of a troop commander within Surveillance Target Acquisition (STA) or Mini Unmanned Air System (MUAS) Regiment.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- **Operate within the ISTAR environment.** Operate within 1 ISR Bde, operate and integrate with a BG and operate within a RA ISTAR Regt.
- **Integrate, task and advise on ISTAR Assets.** Integrate and task ISTAR assets and advise on employment, capabilities and limitations of ISTAR assets.
- **Liaise with intelligence gathering organisations.** Liaise with intelligence gathering organisations to enable the ISTAR process and joint effect, liaise with BG desk officers and liaise with other BG and HQ staff officers.

**Remarks**
Young Officer Course – MLRS
Course No: YO1E

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

Aim of Course

This course is aimed at Young Officers on initial special-to-discipline training for employment as a Troop Commander within a MLRS Battery. Upon successful completion of the course, qualified students will be able to act as a MLRS Command Post Officer (CPO) and Reconnaissance Officer.

Outline of Syllabus

The instruction on the five week MLRS CPO course is delivered by a mixture of classroom based training and a number of days deployed in the field. The course takes advantage of different technologies such as online training through the Defence Learning Environment and classroom based simulation which also includes three MLRS cab simulators to enhance the students learning experience. Training objectives cover five main areas:

- **Deployment.** Command a MLRS Troop in support of conventional war fighting and counter insurgency operations. This includes understanding the threat, counter surveillance, tactical movement, orders process, standard deployments in the field and non-standard deployments such as urban, artillery raids and firing off the line of march.
- **Fire Mission Procedures.** Carryout the duties of a CPO during simulated Guided MLRS-Unitary (GMLRS-U) and AT2 SCATMIN (Anti-Tank Scatterable Mine) fire missions and fire plans. Students will also conduct live firing using the reduced range practice rocket.
- **Servicing and Maintenance.** Conduct vehicle and ancillary items management checks in accordance with the Unit Equipment Care Directive.
- **Precision Guided Munitions.** Detailed theory lessons on how precision guided munitions work including the inertial navigation system, global positioning system, weapon effect using different fuses and weapon employment against various targets sets.
- **Reconnaissance.** Conduct reconnaissance and survey procedures during standard deployments in the field and non-standard deployments such as urban and artillery raids.

Remarks

Young Officer Course – MLRS
Course No: YO1E
Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2Lt Rank or above</td>
<td>Security cleared in accordance with Defence Manual of Security Vol 1 (JSP 440) and that certificates are sent to SO2(Sy) at the RSA.</td>
<td>5 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 times per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artillery Courses

Command Post Officer (CPO) - Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD)

Course No: C15

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train selected officers, warrant officers and senior non-commissioned officers with the skills and knowledge needed to perform the tasks of a GBAD Command Post Officer. On successful completion of the course students will be able to plan and execute GBAD deployments and understand GBAD integration into the Air Defence Plan. The course utilises classroom and on-line theory training, discussion groups plus simulation and live exercises. It should be noted that some elements of the training incur additional security measures and may not be available to all our international partners. | All command post courses make extensive use of simulation to consolidate classroom based activity. Training Objectives cover the areas detailed below:  
- **Integrate GBAD into the Joint AD environment.** The organisation, roles and tactical employment of UK Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD) artillery. Identify the key components of the Joint Air Defence environment and the way in which UK GBAD can be fully integrated. Includes both NATO and UK, (Land, Maritime and Air) Command and Control (C2) structures and procedures.  
- **Conduct Air Intelligent Preparation Environment (IPE) and GBAD Estimate.** Theory and practical lessons utilising current Air threats against the GBAD Estimate and Air Intelligent Preparation of the Environment (Air IPE).  
- **Plan, Co-ordinate, Employ and Deploy UK GBAD.** Primarily focused on UK deployment templates for each Weapon System and their role within the Layered Air Defence process.  
- **Conduct the duties of a GBAD CPO.** A practical element situated in the GBAD Battle rooms focusing on applying the theoretical work previously learnt in the escalation and de-escalation process. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Senior Non-Commissioned Officer or Commissioned to the rank of Lieutenant or Service equivalent.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5.</td>
<td>4 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bi-annually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
International Tactical Targeting (Non FYES)

Course No: Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

**Aim of Course**

To deliver Tactical Targeting training to the non FVEYS community, to enable students to practice and understand the concept of integrating lethal and non-lethal targeting activities with information activities within the tactical space.

**Outline of Syllabus**

Students will be trained how to use various targeting cycles IOT assist with planning within the headquarters. The use of lethal and non-lethal effects will be a focus throughout.

Information operations plays a key part in the non-lethal approach to targeting, the use of gaining information through multi source networks, such as newspapers, magazines, television, radio, and most importantly social media, Facebook, Twitter, Instagram are but some of the most readily available sites exploiting information every second globally.

Understanding of humanitarian law and the Law of Armed conflict, and knowing what we as service personnel can do and what we cannot do to keep us on the right side of the law, and to keep us popular within the press and not allowing countries / media to exploit any potential wrong doing.

Understanding of operational staff work and dissecting the essential parts to help you in the targeting role, and to help and advise your staff within the headquarters.

Symbology associated with friendly and the adversary forces, this enables the individual to pictorially and doctrinally show on mapping and in staff work, the force laydown.

The use of Analytical tools to aid planning processes within a headquarters. Conducting human terrain analysis (HTA) and target systems analysis (TSA), iot build the J2 picture.

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR6 – OF4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5 Confident IT user, Word, Excel and Power point is essential Security cleared via associated Embassy and UK MOD</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**
GBAD Warfare Officer course (GWO)

Course No: A26Z

**Aim of Course**

To develop the skills and knowledge of selected officers and senior non-commissioned officers in order to train them to perform the tasks of a Ground Based Air Defence (GBAD) Warfare Officer (GWO). On completion students will be able to plan and execute GBAD deployments and understand integration of GBAD into the wider Air Defence Plan, in both a UK and NATO environment. The course is primarily classroom based with elements of Command Post Exercises (CPX). The classroom and theory delivery is seminar and discussion based, designed to utilise the experience from the students attending the course, along with external speakers and subject matter experts.

**Outline of Syllabus**

All GBAD Warfare Officer’s courses make extensive use of up to date information passed from other organisations which shapes the simulated CPX environment. The key learning areas are:

- **UK GBAD Capabilities (current and future).** An in depth study of the UK’s GBAD capabilities and a look toward the future.
  - **GBAD Planning (GBAD Estimate).** The students will be updated on the threats currently faced by UK GBAD forces, including briefs from Fixed Wing (FW) and Rotary Wing (RW) pilots along with speakers from UK Intelligence agencies. They will then receive training on how to conduct GBAD planning (to include Air Intelligent Preparation of the Environment (IPE)) at a variety of levels, the conduct of the GBAD estimate as well as carrying out GBAD table top planning exercises up to and including the deployment of GBAD assets.
  - **GBAD Command and Control (C2), Co-ordination and Integration.** Students will be able to understand how the GBAD battle is controlled from the Formation Air Defence Cell (FADC) down to the Fire Co-Ordination Cell (FCC) at Battle-group level, including an insight into GBAD Command Post (CP) procedures. They will also find out how GBAD is integrated into the air and maritime components.
  - **Conduct the duties of a GWO in the CP (CPX).** Practically exercising the current operations element of their duties, in which they will co-ordinate and control the GBAD Battle using ‘Battle rooms’ and simulators. This will include the escalation and de-escalation of GBAD posturing.

**Remarks**

**Rank Range**

Senior Non-Commissioned Officer Ssgt – WO1 & Officers Capt and above

**Entry Standards**

Entry standards are the rank range

**Duration**

6 weeks

**Qualifications gained**

GBAD Warfare Officer (GWO)

**Frequency**

Bi-annually
Artillery Courses

Full Spectrum Targeting (FSpecT).

Course No: T13F

Royal School of Artillery Larkhill

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To enable students to understand the concept of integrating lethal and non-lethal targeting activities with information activities and with Outreach / Capacity Building activities and capabilities.</td>
<td>The Royal Artillery delivers the Full Spectrum Targeting Course to members of the RA and the rest of the Field Army. The aim of the course is to deliver an understanding whereby the student is able to comprehend the complexities of the full spectrum surrounding targeting. The student will look at how information operations play a key part in the non-lethal approach to targeting, the use of gaining information through multi source networks, such as newspapers, magazines, television, radio, and most importantly social media, Facebook, Twitter, Instagram are but some of the most readily available sites exploiting information every second globally. Collateral damage; explaining how the use of UK Methodology can negate damage to buildings or even injuries or death to innocent civilians when carrying out military tasks. Understanding of humanitarian law and the Law of Armed conflict, and knowing what we as service personnel can do and what we cannot do in order to keep us on the right side of the law, and to keep us popular within the press and not allowing countries / media to exploit any potential wrong doing. Understanding of operational staff work and dissecting the essential parts to help you in the targeting role, and to help and advise your staff within the headquarters. Symbology associated with friendly and the adversary forces, this enables the individual to pictorially and doctrinally show on mapping and in staff work, the force laydown. Munitions briefs as to showing the student practically, different types of warheads and effects associated with different weapon systems currently in use by the world armies.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR4 - OF4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5 Some previous targeting experience. SC Security clearance.</td>
<td>4 weeks for UK and FVEY students only, all other nations will join at week 2 of the course as they are unable to complete week 1. (Week 1 being Collateral Damage Estimation (CDE))</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Defence Chef Basic

**Course No: 10C/3807**

### Aim of Course

To provide a base knowledge of the role, work and responsibilities associated with the role of a junior chef within a military and Catering Retail & Leisure (CRL) environment.

### Outline of Syllabus

There is 10 days deployed operations training during this course where students will be required to operate a field catering deployed site and prepare an operational hygiene unit ready for use. Students are summatively tested using appropriate tests and marking guides. Testing, where possible, is carried out by an independant invigilator who has not taught on the subjects. However, where Subject Matter Expert (SME) is required and the only one available is the course instructor, that person will act as the invigilator.

The following Training Objectives (TOs) are covered:

- Apply the principles of Basic Food Hygiene.
- Apply the principles of Health and Safety in the workplace.
- Prepare, cook and serve meats, turkey, offal, vegetables, potatoes, fish, shellfish, stocks, soups, sauces, rice, pasta, egg, sweets, pastry products, salads and sandwiches in an appropriate manner.
- Cater for Diversity.
- Demonstrate hot plate dishes.
- Operate a field catering deployed site.
- Prepare an Operational Hygiene Unit (OHU) ready for use.
- Describe the catering organisation on a RAF unit.
- Explain the career path of TG19 personnel.
- Define own role in the maintenance of RAF Ethos, Core Values and Standards.
- Describe the role of TG19 in effective delivery of air power.

### Remarks

To provide a base knowledge of the role, work and responsibilities associated with the role of a junior chef within a military and Catering Retail & Leisure (CRL) environment.

There is no entry test for this course. However, students will be monitored and placed under a Student Review Board if found that they do not meet the required standard.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 2 students - Private/ Aircraftman/ Leading Aircraftman (OR2)</td>
<td>To be eligible the course students must have completed recruit training; possess a General Training Index (GT) score of 38 or higher; have an appropriate medical category and be in possession a Fit to handle Food Certificate.</td>
<td>90 Working Days</td>
<td>Highfield Awarding Body for Compliance (HABC) Level 2 Award in Managing Food Safety in Catering.</td>
<td>12 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Food Service Officer

**Course No: 498/010**

## Aim of Course

The aim of the course is to provide underpinning knowledge, skills and competencies required for a Logistics Officer to operate as Food Services Officers. The course is designed to equip a Logistics Officer with the professional competencies necessary to operate the food services function at Area/Brigade level in both peace and war. Students will be required to do research and study in their own time. The Food Hygiene and Nutrition modules include highly specialised terminology on bacteriological and physiological issues, which will require pre-reading.

## Outline of Syllabus

- Hands on experience: Victualling and Cookery
- Food Supply and Catering Accounting
- The management of Unit Messing, and food supply systems for peacetime and operational
- The development of competencies required by a SO3 Log Sp/Bde Food Service Officer, this includes auditing and contract management
- 8 weeks delivered by Swansea Institute where students may gain a Post Graduate Diploma in Logistic Management.

The Institute modules consist of:

- Contracts Management
- Facilities Management
- Finance and Budget Management
- Diploma in Nutrition
- Human Resource Management
- ISO 9000:2000 Series Auditor/Lead Auditor
- Food Logistics.

The aim of the course is to provide underpinning knowledge, skills and competencies required for a Logistics Officer to operate as Food Services Officers. The course is designed to equip a Logistics Officer with the professional competencies necessary to operate the food services function at Area/Brigade level in both peace and war. Students will be required to do research and study in their own time. The Food Hygiene and Nutrition modules include highly specialised terminology on bacteriological and physiological issues, which will require pre-reading.

## Remarks

There is a strong action learning philosophy underpinning the course. 15% of the course will include attachments to Army Units and commercial organisations.

## Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant to Captain</td>
<td>IELTS level 7. Should be IT literate preferably with knowledge of MS Office (Version 4.2), Word (Version 6), Excel (Version 5) and PowerPoint (Version 4). Be numerate. Have general knowledge of the logistical function. Fit to Handle Food certificate (should not be a carrier of a food borne disease). An understanding of UK Food and Safety legislation is desired.</td>
<td>8 months</td>
<td>Advanced Food Hygiene Certificate. HASAW 74 Manager Certificate.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Production Supervisors

**Course No: 10W/007G**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 students - Private-Corporal (OR2-OR4)</td>
<td>All students attending the course must have practiced in the last 12 months, the provisioning and accounting skills relevant to their rank and status. Additionally, they must meet the requirement for Army Chefs to be able to provide meals in the field.</td>
<td>20 Working Days.</td>
<td>Advanced Food Hygiene Certificate. HASAW 74 Manager Certificate.</td>
<td>6 Courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**
- To update and develop the supervisory skills required of an Army Corporal Chef.
- Students are summatively tested using appropriate tests and marking guides. Testing, where possible, is carried out by an independent invigilator who has not taught on the subjects. However, where Subject Matter Expert (SME) is required and the only one available is the course instructor, that person will act as the invigilator.
- The following Training Objectives (TOs) are covered:
  - Supervise the operation of a permanent kitchen.
  - Manage buildings and equipment.
  - Work as a supervisor within a catering contract environment.
  - Carry out the catering function in a permanent kitchen.
  - Ensure commercial awareness.
  - Supervise the operation in a field environment.
  - Site a field kitchen.
  - Carry out additional duties.
  - Comply with relevant legislation.

**Outline of Syllabus**
- There is no longer a pre-course diagnostic test but the pre-course requirements stipulated by Army HQ remain extant. These are the mandated requirement for annual field catering and provisioning and accounting training, stipulated in the Policy for Employment of Army Chefs in the Home Base.
### Royal Logistics Core (RLC) Food Services Unit Catering Manager (UCM)

**Course No: 10C/004G**

**DCLPA Worthy Down**

**Aim of Course**

To train personnel to have a broader knowledge and understanding of the catering contract and the skills required to prepare them for operational deployments.

**Outline of Syllabus**

Students are summatively tested using appropriate tests and marking guides. Testing, where possible, is carried out by an independent invigilator who has not taught on the subjects. However, where Subject Matter Expert (SME) is required and the only one available is the course instructor, that person will act as the invigilator.

The following Training Objectives (TOs) are covered:
- Plan the production of meals in a permanent kitchen
- Produce a catering management plan.
- Carry out Pre Deployment Drills
- Plan Deployment Activities
- Plan the allocation of manpower resources.
- Manage the moral and welfare of military staff.
- Account for rations in non-operational environments.
- Conduct checks on serviceability of kitchens/dining rooms, stores and catering equipment.
- Liaise with personnel on catering related matters.
- Prepare for pre-inspection checks for a Logistic Support Inspection LSI.

**Remarks**

There is no longer a pre-course diagnostic test but the pre-course requirements stipulated by Army HQ remain extant. These are the mandated requirements for annual field catering and provisioning and accounting training, stipulated in the Policy for Employment of RLC Chefs in the Home Base.

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 students -</td>
<td>Students must meet the following criteria:</td>
<td>24 Working Days</td>
<td>Highfield Awarding Body for Compliance (HABC) Level 4 Award in Managing Food Safety in Catering.</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant (OR6)</td>
<td>• Served at least 1 year as a production supervisor.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Have an appropriate medical category.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Completed an appropriate promotion course Part 1 &amp; Part 2.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hold a recognised Level 3 Food Safety Certificate or national equivalent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Hold a fit to handle food certificate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Royal Logistics Core (RLC) Food Services Chef Class 1 (CC1)

**Course No:** 10C/1501

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 students - Lance Corporal (OR 4)</td>
<td>The diagnostic test will be re-taken on Day 1 of the course to ensure students are at the required skill levels prior to course commencement. If students fail the test they will be placed on a Student Review Board (SRB) and then given one final chance to pass the test; further failure will result in RTU action. In addition to successfully completing the pre-course diagnostic test, students are required to successfully complete mandatory annual training in field catering and ration accounting.</td>
<td>55 Working Days</td>
<td>Highfield Awarding Body for Compliance (HABC) Level 3 Award in Managing Food Safety in Catering.</td>
<td>6 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The course consists of three separate training elements: assist with the supervision of personnel and infrastructure (theory classroom based), additional culinary skills (practical kitchen based) and revision of field craft skills (field catering training facility).

The following Training Objectives (TOs) are covered:

- Comply with current legislation.
- Work in a CRL environment.
- Manage permanent buildings and equipment.
- Supervise personnel.
- Plan, supervise and carry out production in a permanent kitchen.
- Manage the moral and welfare of military staff.
- Deploy and operate in an operational kitchen.
- Liaise with personnel.

Students are summatively tested using appropriate tests and marking guides. Testing, where possible, is carried out by an independent invigilator who has not taught on the subjects. However, where Subject Matter Expert (SME) is required and the only one available is the course instructor, that person will act as the invigilator.
### Combined Arms Tactics Course (CATAc)

**Course No: 490/003**

**Aim of Course**

The course aim is to train sub-unit commanders of the combat and combat support arms in the practical application of combined arms' tactics in order to prepare them for operations in high intensity war fighting at sub-unit level within or in support of a battle group.

**Endstate:**

An officer who can command a sub-unit within or in support of a battle group in high intensity war fighting operations.

**Outline of Syllabus**

Focuses on combined arms operations at the battle group level. Over 50% of the course is practical in nature. The course is focussed on high intensity war fighting. It involves presentations, classroom discussions and field training exercises covering all aspects of war using practical simulation training aids. Significant emphasis is placed on syndicate discussion and sharing of experience and expertise.

**Remarks**

Phase 1: G1 / G4.

Phase 2: Combat estimate. Tactics, techniques and procedures examined by means of tactical exercise without troops and model exercises.

Phase 3: Phase 3 culminates with Ex LIONS STRIKE - a field training exercise based on an armoured/light infantry battle group. Aspects practised include offensive operations, movement drills, harbour drills, obstacle crossing, operations in urban areas.

### Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major. Normally Sub-unit Commanders of Armoured, Combat Service Support, Mechanised or Air Assault battle groups but is particularly valuable for those who are about to take up appointments as a company/squadron/battery commander are eligible to attend the course. Artillery forward observation officers may also attend. It is also open to staff officers who are about to take up tactics teaching posts and to operations officers of the combat and combat support arms.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. 3-4 years of Regimental Duty An understanding of British Military Doctrine and terminology would be most useful although this is covered in the pre-course for international students.</td>
<td>Total 3 weeks.</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Combined Arms & Collective Training Courses

### Brigade Commanders’ Programme NATO Only (BCP)

**Course No: 490/005**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Limited to NATO brigade commanders and their artillery, engineer and logistics equivalent on the staff. Approximately 8-10 senior officers attend each course.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Working knowledge of British Military doctrine and terminology.</td>
<td>4 days</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Combined Arms & Collective Training Courses

## Light Close Reconnaissance Commanders’ Course (LCRCC)

**Course No: 640F**

**Aim of Course**

The Light Reconnaissance Commanders’ Course is a seven week course that provides pre-employment training for light reconnaissance platoon and section commanders. The aim is to qualify students to train and command a light reconnaissance section or platoon in all operations of war.

**Outline of Syllabus**

Instruction focuses on subject matter lectures mixed with arduous practical assessment. Navigation, infantry battle skills and communication are major elements of the training throughout both practical exercises and theoretical lectures. The following subjects are covered:

- Instruction in dismounted patrol techniques
- Battle Procedure
- Communications
- Operations
- Obstacles
- Indirect Fire Control
- Recognition
- Navigation
- Surveillance Techniques
- Surveillance Devices
- Air Photographic Interpretation
- Counter-surveillance Techniques.

Instruction is very practical with 43 days out of 54 spent in the field. The mechanised version of this course is the Armoured Close Recce Course.

**Remarks**

This course is suited to those who are about to take up appointments as the commander of a reconnaissance section or platoon or as a platoon second in command.

**Qualifications gained**

LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Captain.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5, PCBC, PSBC or SCBC, JOTAC highly desirable for Officers. Physical fitness completion of the relevant Battle Course or several years experience in an Infantry Unit.</td>
<td>8 weeks - Cpl-Sgt. 10 weeks - C Sgt-Capt.</td>
<td>LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Outline of Syllabus**

The Light Reconnaissance Commanders’ Course is a seven week course that provides pre-employment training for light reconnaissance platoon and section commanders. The aim is to qualify students to train and command a light reconnaissance section or platoon in all operations of war.

Instruction focuses on subject matter lectures mixed with arduous practical assessment. Navigation, infantry battle skills and communication are major elements of the training throughout both practical exercises and theoretical lectures. The following subjects are covered:

- Instruction in dismounted patrol techniques
- Battle Procedure
- Communications
- Operations
- Obstacles
- Indirect Fire Control
- Recognition
- Navigation
- Surveillance Techniques
- Surveillance Devices
- Air Photographic Interpretation
- Counter-surveillance Techniques.

Instruction is very practical with 43 days out of 54 spent in the field. The mechanised version of this course is the Armoured Close Recce Course.

**Remarks**

This course is suited to those who are about to take up appointments as the commander of a reconnaissance section or platoon or as a platoon second in command.

**Qualifications gained**

LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Captain.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5, PCBC, PSBC or SCBC, JOTAC highly desirable for Officers. Physical fitness completion of the relevant Battle Course or several years experience in an Infantry Unit.</td>
<td>8 weeks - Cpl-Sgt. 10 weeks - C Sgt-Capt.</td>
<td>LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Outline of Syllabus**

The Light Reconnaissance Commanders’ Course is a seven week course that provides pre-employment training for light reconnaissance platoon and section commanders. The aim is to qualify students to train and command a light reconnaissance section or platoon in all operations of war.

Instruction focuses on subject matter lectures mixed with arduous practical assessment. Navigation, infantry battle skills and communication are major elements of the training throughout both practical exercises and theoretical lectures. The following subjects are covered:

- Instruction in dismounted patrol techniques
- Battle Procedure
- Communications
- Operations
- Obstacles
- Indirect Fire Control
- Recognition
- Navigation
- Surveillance Techniques
- Surveillance Devices
- Air Photographic Interpretation
- Counter-surveillance Techniques.

Instruction is very practical with 43 days out of 54 spent in the field. The mechanised version of this course is the Armoured Close Recce Course.

**Remarks**

This course is suited to those who are about to take up appointments as the commander of a reconnaissance section or platoon or as a platoon second in command.

**Qualifications gained**

LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Captain.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5, PCBC, PSBC or SCBC, JOTAC highly desirable for Officers. Physical fitness completion of the relevant Battle Course or several years experience in an Infantry Unit.</td>
<td>8 weeks - Cpl-Sgt. 10 weeks - C Sgt-Capt.</td>
<td>LCR Section Commander and LCR PI Comd/2IC</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Brigade Legal Officers Course (BLOC)

Course No: 495/001

To prepare military lawyers for operational deployments with Brigade Headquarters or at Task Force level.

The course is a mixture of practical and academic instruction which assumes both a familiarity with and understanding of the Law of Armed Conflict, Rules of Engagement and to some degree targeting. Those attending will be exposed to a pragmatic approach to legal interpretation required to meet the challenges of the contemporary operating environment.

Lectures will range from the tactical to strategic level, to place the Legal Adviser’s role in context, and amongst the practical aspects considered will be targeting and the actual application of force in high pressure situations. Specialist presenters are drawn from NGOs, the military, government and academic institutions. Areas of study include counter insurgency, international agreements, international law on human rights, international criminal law, legal aspects of prisoner of war handling and targeting and post conflict resolution.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suitable for senior Captains to Lieutenant Colonels who have not recently deployed as a legal advisor to a formation headquarters.</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year April and October</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Combined Arms & Collective Training Courses

### Light Cavalry Commanders’ Course (LCCC)

**Course No: 603**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Second Lieutenant to Lieutenant</td>
<td>IELTS Level 5.5 The student must hold a FULL or PROVISIONAL driving licence</td>
<td>86 weeks</td>
<td>Troop Leader</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**
To give newly commissioned Armoured Corps Officers basic training in Jackal Gunnery, Driving and Maintenance, Signals and in commanding a reconnaissance (recce) troop, including a practical phase.

**Outline of Syllabus**

**Gunnery**
- Target Engagement
- Equipment Maintenance
- Safety Procedures
- Troop and Crew Control

**Driving and Maintenance**
- Jackal details phase
- Servicing
- Driving and Commanding by Day and Night
- Administrative Responsibilities of a Troop Leader

**Signals**
- Call signs
- Reports
- Trace and Map Marking
- VHF Antenna Siting
- Voice Procedure
- Electronic Warfare
- Indoor and Outdoor Exercises

**Tactics**
- Analysis of the Threat
- Jackal Vehicle Tactics
- Vehicle Recognition
- Receipt and Issue of Orders
- Chemical, Biological, Radiological and Nuclear Defence
- Introduction to the All Arms Battlegroup
- Field Training Exercise

**Remarks**
The course should be followed by a period of practical experience in command of a light reconnaissance troop.
List of Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Defence and Security Master’s courses (MSc):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cyber Defence and Information Assurance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cyberspace Operations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Acquisition Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Leadership</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Defence Simulation and Modelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Digital Forensics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Explosives Ordnance Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forensic Archaeology and Anthropology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forensic Ballistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forensic Engineering and Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forensic Explosive and Explosion Investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forensic Investigation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guided Weapon Systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gun Systems Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information Capability Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>International Defence and Security</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Aerospace and Airworthiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Electronic Systems Engineering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Operational Research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Military Vehicle Technology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Programme and Project Management (Defence)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Security Sector Management</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systems Engineering for Defence Capability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vehicle and Weapon Engineering (USA)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Research Degrees:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cranfield research programmes lead to degrees in PhD, Executive DBA, EngD, MPhil or MSc by Research.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cranfield University Short Courses:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cranfield University offer a wide variety of short courses in Defence and Security, Aerospace, Manufacturing as well as other areas.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Further Information

For more information and a full list of courses offered at both Cranfield School of Management and Cranfield University, please visit www.cranfield.ac.uk or Contact the Cranfield Enquiries Office T: +44 (0)1234 750111

Cranfield University at Shrivenham
Shrivenham
Swindon
SN6 8LA
UK
### Basic Trade Courses

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The school delivers trade specific training aimed at the Land environment for Communication Systems Engineers (Comms Sys Engr), Communication Systems Operator (Comms Sys Op), Electronic Warfare Operator (EW Op), Royal Signals Electrician (Elec), Installation Technician (Install Tech) and Communication Logistic Specialist (CLS). Basic trade courses are designed to cater for personnel with limited or no experience of engineering; and build upon taught basic engineering principles in order to develop trainees into Class 3 tradesmen (to work under supervision) within their trade group.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Booked via IDT(raf)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR2-3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Class 1 (Upgrader) Courses

Course No: 41 weeks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3-4</td>
<td>iELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>41 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Class 1 (Cl1) courses develop Class 2 (Cl2) experienced tradesmen (gained at unit level) in all trades, into tradesmen suitable to work unsupervised; supervise others and certify standards of work. Tradesmen arriving on their Cl1 course should be suitably experienced in their trade cohort and be recommended for further trade training.

Remarks

DSCIS Blandford

Booked via IDT(raf)
Supervisor Courses

*Course No:*  

**Rank Range**  
Minimum OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend)

**Entry Standards**  
IELTS level 5.5

**Duration**  
Foreman of Signals course is 70 – 80 weeks and Yeoman of Signals course is 60 weeks.

**Qualifications gained**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend)</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>Foreman of Signals course is 70 – 80 weeks and Yeoman of Signals course is 60 weeks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**  
Supervisor courses are run specifically for the Comms Sys Engr, EW Op and CS Op within DSCIS Blandford. The Supervisor courses build upon previous C11 course content and engineering knowledge gained whilst at units in order to give a broader range of trade knowledge. Emphasis on the supervisor courses is also placed on engineering management and in depth understanding across a wide range of subjects. Course loading for the supervisor course is via a stringent selection process and are qualified at Foundation degree for the Operators, Bachelor of Science (BSc) or Bachelor of Engineering (BEng) for the Engineers.

**Outline of Syllabus**

**Remarks**

Booked via IDT(RAF)

**DSCIS Blandford**

Foreman of Signals course is 70 – 80 weeks and Yeoman of Signals course is 60 weeks.

IELTS level 5.5 Minimum OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend)
## Troop Commander

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2Lt/Lt (OF 1-2)</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>25 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**
To provide young officers with sufficient knowledge of signal tactics, equipment and communications and information systems to enable them to command a Signal Troop efficiently, effectively and with confidence.

**Outline of Syllabus**

**Remarks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4 International Officers on each course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Booked via IDT(raf)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DSCIS Blandford**
### Installation Technician CI1

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR4-5</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>22 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Defence College of Technical Training**

**DSCIS Blandford**

**Remarks**

Booked via IDT( RAF)
**International Officers Electronic Warfare**

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR8-OF3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year, normally held in September.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

This course provides non UK tri service officers with an overview of Land Electronic Warfare fundamentals from NATO doctrine and the UK perspective in order to enable them to understand and advise how Land EW contributes to joint military operations and the planning considerations for the use of various capabilities.

**Remarks**

DSCIS Blandford

---

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Up to 20 students.
Defence School of Electronic and Mechanical Engineering

**Aim of Course**

Defence School of Electronic and Mechanical Engineering (DSEME Lyneham) run REME career and equipment courses in order to provide trade specific engineering training tailored to experience and career stage. DSEME Lyneham also provides 150+ equipment courses designed to address maintaining and repairing specific equipment as held at unit level. The REME Arms School also provides 21 bespoke REME or Equipment Support related courses and engineering leadership and management courses.

**Basic Trade Courses:** The school delivers trade specific training aimed at the Land environment for Vehicle Mechanic (VM), Electronic Technician (Elect Tech), Armourer (Armr), Metalsmith (MSm), Recovery Mechanic (RMech) and Technical Supply Specialist (TSS). Basic trade courses are designed to cater for personnel with limited or no experience of engineering; and build upon taught basic engineering principles in order to develop trainees into Class 3 tradesmen (to work under supervision) within their trade group. **OR2-3.**

**Class 1 (Upgrader) Courses:** The Class 1 (Cl1) courses develop Class 2 (Cl2) experienced tradesmen (gained at unit level) in the VM, Elect Tech, Armr, MSm, RMech and TSS trades, into tradesmen suitable to work unsupervised; supervise others and certify standards of work. Tradesmen arriving on their Cl1 course should be suitably experienced in their trade cohort and be recommended for further trade training. **OR3-4.**

**Artificer Courses:** Artificer courses are run specifically for the VM, Tech Elect and Armr trade groups within DSEME Lyneham. The Artificer courses build upon previous Cl1 course content and engineering knowledge gained whilst at units in order to give a broader range of trade knowledge. Emphasis on the artificer courses is also placed on engineering management and in depth understanding across a wide range of subjects. Course loading for the artificer course is via a stringent selection process and are qualified at HND Level 5 (VM & Armr) and Bachelor of Science (BSc) for Elect Tech. Minimum **OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend).**

**Equipment Courses:** These courses are designed to maintain and repair a range of electronic and mechanical equipment as held at unit level. There are also courses covering further techniques and development for the MSm and RMech trade groups. Courses vary in length depending on equipment complexity and depth of maintenance required; and are usually trade exclusive (although not always); with prerequisites placed on trade group and standard (Cl3, Cl2, Cl1) and previous experience. There is some capability to tailor these equipment courses to meet specific needs or select certain modules as required. **OR2-9.**

**Engineering and Equipment Support Management Courses:** Engineer management and engineering support management courses that provide the necessary skills and technical understanding to enhance engineering processes, procedures and efficiencies or understand the military equipment material concepts and doctrine. **OR6-OF4**

**Health and Safety:** Two workplace safety advisors or safety managers course applicable to the military engineering environment. Both courses are designed to be all Arms or attended by civilian equivalents. These courses provide a very good foundation for further advancement in the G4 and/or H&S sphere in support of the MOD. There is also the opportunity to attend British Safety Council H&S examinations on completion of these courses. **OR6-OF4**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR2 - OF4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>Range from 1 day to 70+ weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

DSEME Lyneham run REME career and equipment courses in order to provide trade specific engineering training tailored to experience and career stage. DSEME Lyneham also provides 150+ equipment courses designed to address maintaining and repairing specific equipment as held at unit level. The REME Arms School also provides 21 bespoke REME or Equipment Support related courses and engineering leadership and management courses.

Basic Trade Courses: The school delivers trade specific training aimed at the Land environment for Vehicle Mechanic (VM), Electronic Technician (Elect Tech), Armourer (Armr), Metalsmith (MSm), Recovery Mechanic (RMech) and Technical Supply Specialist (TSS). Basic trade courses are designed to cater for personnel with limited or no experience of engineering; and build upon taught basic engineering principles in order to develop trainees into Class 3 tradesmen (to work under supervision) within their trade group. **OR2-3.**

Class 1 (Upgrader) Courses: The Class 1 (Cl1) courses develop Class 2 (Cl2) experienced tradesmen (gained at unit level) in the VM, Elect Tech, Armr, MSm, RMech and TSS trades, into tradesmen suitable to work unsupervised; supervise others and certify standards of work. Tradesmen arriving on their Cl1 course should be suitably experienced in their trade cohort and be recommended for further trade training. **OR3-4.**

Artificer Courses: Artificer courses are run specifically for the VM, Tech Elect and Armr trade groups within DSEME Lyneham. The Artificer courses build upon previous Cl1 course content and engineering knowledge gained whilst at units in order to give a broader range of trade knowledge. Emphasis on the artificer courses is also placed on engineering management and in depth understanding across a wide range of subjects. Course loading for the artificer course is via a stringent selection process and are qualified at HND Level 5 (VM & Armr) and Bachelor of Science (BSc) for Elect Tech. Minimum **OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend).**

Equipment Courses: These courses are designed to maintain and repair a range of electronic and mechanical equipment as held at unit level. There are also courses covering further techniques and development for the MSm and RMech trade groups. Courses vary in length depending on equipment complexity and depth of maintenance required; and are usually trade exclusive (although not always); with prerequisites placed on trade group and standard (Cl3, Cl2, Cl1) and previous experience. There is some capability to tailor these equipment courses to meet specific needs or select certain modules as required. **OR2-9.**

Engineering and Equipment Support Management Courses: Engineer management and engineering support management courses that provide the necessary skills and technical understanding to enhance engineering processes, procedures and efficiencies or understand the military equipment material concepts and doctrine. **OR6-OF4**

Health and Safety: Two workplace safety advisors or safety managers course applicable to the military engineering environment. Both courses are designed to be all Arms or attended by civilian equivalents. These courses provide a very good foundation for further advancement in the G4 and/or H&S sphere in support of the MOD. There is also the opportunity to attend British Safety Council H&S examinations on completion of these courses. **OR6-OF4**

**Remarks**

Booked via IDT(raf)
All Arms Advanced Drill Instructor  
Course No: 416/001

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeants, Staff Sergeants and Warrant Officers</td>
<td>IELTS level 5. Attendance on All Arms Basic Drill Instructor</td>
<td>3 weeks 3 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**: To teach Senior Non Commissioned Officers and Warrant Officers to be supervisors of training and to be trained in ceremonial drill.

**Outline of Syllabus**:  
- All aspects of foot and arms drill  
- Ceremonial drill including swords, colours and pancestick  
- Ceremonial funeral drill  
- Teaching practice.

**Remarks**:  
Candidates must attend Basic Course first. Students should arrive with medical certificate from their doctor to state they are medically fit to undertake an arduous course.
**Basic Drill Instructor**  
*Course No: 416/002*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Non Commissioned Officer/ Warrant Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 5</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**
To teach junior non commissioned officers to become drill instructors in their unit or at a training establishment.

**Outline of Syllabus**
- All aspects of foot and arms drill
- Method of instruction
- Teaching practices.

**Remarks**
This course is designed to teach overseas students and Warrant Officers/Non Commissioned Officers of the reserve forces all that they require to teach drill to recruits and trained soldiers. This is a high intensity course on which the students will be required to work extremely hard. Those nominated should be well motivated. Students should arrive with medical certificate from their doctor to state they are medically fit to undertake an arduous course.
## All Arms Basic Drill Instructor

**Course No: 416/006**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Junior Non Commissioned Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 5</td>
<td>2 weeks 3 dyas</td>
<td></td>
<td>8 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Aim of Course

To teach Junior Non Commissioned Officers to become drill instructors in their unit or at a training establishment.

### Outline of Syllabus

- All aspects of foot and arms drill
- Method of instruction
- Teaching practices.

### Remarks

This course is designed to teach Junior Non Commissioned Officers of the regular army all that they require to teach drill to recruits and trained soldiers. For the young Non Commissioned Officer moving to his first instructional position it is a ‘MUST DO’ course. Students should arrive with medical certificate from their doctor to state they are medically fit to undertake an arduous course.
# Drum Drill Major

**Course No: 416/003**

**SCHINF Catterick**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Senior Non Commissioned Officers and Officers</td>
<td>IELTS level 5. Some experience of drill. Must be a member of a Regimental Band or Corps of Drums.</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

To teach standard foot and mace drill and ceremonial foot and mace drill.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- All aspects of foot and mace drill
- All aspects of ceremonial drill
- Responsibilities of a senior Drum Major on parade
- Practical work with military musicians.

**Remarks**

Candidates must have undergone a minimum of one week’s drill training in their own unit before commencing this course. Students should arrive with medical certificate from their doctor to state they are medically fit to undertake an arduous course.
Driving Courses

Defence Staff Car Driver
Course No: 11/0097

Aim of Course
To train military and civilian drivers to be able to professionally drive VIPs and their families/guests in the provision of the highest security and safeguarding procedures.

Outline of Syllabus
Over a 2 week period students will be expected to plan a secure route and drive a vehicle taking all the necessary precautions to safeguard the occupants and themselves. They will learn how to take the necessary evasive action when confronted with an ambush or incident using the purpose built training area enabling students to travel off road and immerse themselves into a realistic environment. A combination of classroom and use of the military training environment, students will also be expected to learn about vehicle maintenance and general safety. They will also be taught to in how to use the principles of skid control and prevention within a controlled environment. Students are to demonstrate effective personal behaviours and have a good understanding in how to engage with high profile personnel. This is a high mileage course and students experience various driving scenarios during the day time and night time. On completion of the course students are entitled to enrol with the Institute of Advanced Motorist.

Remarks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private-Sergeant or civilian equivalent.</td>
<td>International English Learning Testing System (IELTS) Level 6. Minimum 12 months driving experience. Full Cat B Driving Licence or national equivalent.</td>
<td>8 working days</td>
<td>Defence Staff Car Driver Competency</td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Master Driver

**Course No: 11T/0054**

### Aim of Course
To train personnel to be conversant in advising Brigades in assurance and governance in accordance with the management checks, Logistic Support Assurance Framework (LSAF).

### Outline of Syllabus
Student will learn how to advise on transport management procedures and supervise a Defence Testing and Licencing Authority (DeLTA) office. They will be taught in how to contract manage driver training and how to carry out 1st line assurance and will visit other civilian and defence organisations.

The 6 week course covers:

- **Week 1** - Learn to be a Manager in Dangerous Goods.
- **Week 2** - Deliver a presentation.
- **Week 3** - Operation Fleet Management, Exercise Management, Budget Management.
- **Week 4** - Visits to DVLA to learn about the licensing process, ARMCEN to learn about the provision of their facility and RAF Master Dvr at 2MT.
- **Week 5** - LSAF to learn and present yourself as an auditor and visit a unit and conduct assurance activity.
- **Week 6** - Tri-More Exercise – Testing in a realistic working environment on Operational Fleet Management, a governance based presentation and conducting a back brief.

### Remarks
Previous attendance May 2017/May 2018 (NZ).

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
---|---|---|---|---
SSgt - WO | Must have completed DRSA (Defence Road Safety Advisor), RLC Tpt Specialist Course or national equivalent. Specialist Driver Class 1 (RLC only), JAMES Senior Equipment Manager training. | 6 weeks | Royal Logistic Corps Master Driver Competency | 1 course per year
## Defence Transport Manager

**Course No: 11/0055**

### Aim of Course

To train unit Mechanical Transport (MT) Managers to first line assurance level in how to manage the day to day operation of a unit MT department within barracks and in an on operational environment.

### Outline of Syllabus

The Defence Transport Manager would work closely with the Master Driver and provide the 1st party assurance activity for an MT unit. It offers the opportunity for students to be taught on how to manage a MT department, manning, budgets, vehicle contracts, vehicle and equipment maintenance programme and be able to supervise all administration procedures within a unit MT during peacetime and whilst on operations. It also covers the duties of a HAZMAT (Hazardous Material) Manager. Students will also be taught how to manage road safety procedures and are encouraged to attend the Defence Road Safety Advisor course (11T/0056).

This course is primarily classroom based and has 3 modules:
- MT Management.
- MT Accounting Procedures.
- Hazardous Material (HAZMAT).

### Remarks

Previous attendance Jul 2017 (Germany).

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Officer, Warrant Officer, Flight Sergeant or Civilian equivalent. | Cat B Driving Licence or national equivalent International English Lerning Testing System (IELTS) Level 6. | 12 working days | Defence Transport Manager Competency | 5 courses per year
# Driving Courses

## Defence Road Safety Advisor (DRSA)

**Course No:** 11T/0056

### Aim of Course

The aim of the course is to train selected personnel to be competent and qualified in road safety and to maintain the Ministry of Defence Road Safety Campaign Programme.

### Outline of Syllabus

During the 5 working days students will be required to investigate road traffic collisions/incidents and learn how to advise and update Unit Commanders on road safety. Training will cover the importance of the distribution of road safety publications and educational and training material. Will visit other civilian and defence organisations.

During the course students will be expected to meet the required standard in:

- Providing advice on routing and signing of traffic circuits in a camp.
- Provide continuation training such as various driving events, for example reversing round corners, road safety etc.
- Advising on routing and signing of traffic circuits in camp area.
- Complete post Road Traffic Accidents/Road Traffic Incidents documentation.
- Understand and apply the accident reporting procedure

Humberside Fire & Rescue Services provide a presentation which provides a full immersive training environment by the use of virtual reality goggles.

This course provides students with an opportunity to enter the Annual Defence Safety Competition where previous winners have been recognised in making outstanding commitments to improving work-related road safety.

### Remarks

Previous attendance May 2017/May 2018 (NZ).

---

### Rank Range

- **Phase 3 personnel** – minimum rank OR6 or above and Civilian equivalent.
- Must have a minimum of 2 years’ service remaining.
- Must hold an instructional qualification recognised and recorded on JPA/HRMS.

### Entry Standards

- Must hold a valid GB issued photocard driving licence with at least a full category B (car) entitlement or national equivalent.
- All students are to have one year’s driving experience.
- All students are to have one year’s driving experience.
- Highly recommended that students practice their presentational skills as the DRSA course students will deliver a 20-minute PowerPoint presentation as part of a syndicate.

### Duration

5 working days

### Qualifications gained

- Defence Road Safety Advisor Competency

### Frequency

- 5 courses per year

---

DCLPA DST Leconfield
Driving Courses

Defence Transport Operator
Course No: 11T/0057

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train personnel to be competent in the running of a Mechanical Transport (MT) Section and provide advice to the Chain of Command (CoC) on all aspects of Dangerous Goods Transport. | By the end of the course, students will be expected to demonstrate a level of competency in how to:  
• Supervise MT Staff – mentor young drivers.  
• Prepare a detailed Maintenance Programme/Forecast.  
• Produce & provide Cost Data to Vehicle & Equipment Users.  
• Operate an efficient MT Office.  
• Supervise MT Contracts.  
• Provide advice to the Chain Of Command (CoC) on all aspects of Dangerous Goods Transport.  
• Integrate into 1st Line Assurance.  
All training is classroom based and conducted during the working day. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum rank of Sergeant. Civil Servants and authorised Contractors must have practical Transport Operating experience.</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with minimum full category B entitlement or national equivalent. Joint Asset Management and Engineering Solution (JAMES) training is not delivered during this course; however it should be noted that this course is JAMES compliant. It is strongly recommended that students are familiar with the JAMES processes and terminology, and are trained in the role of Senior Equipment Manager prior to attending the course.</td>
<td>14 working days</td>
<td>Defence Transport Operator Competency</td>
<td>7 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Defence Junior Transport Operator

**Course No:** 11T/0064

**Outline of Syllabus**

Students will learn the basics of running a Mechanical Transport (MT) Section and to assist the Defence Transport Manager in how to:

- Manage personnel.
- Manage vehicle equipment.
- Operate an MT section.
- Carry out operational deployment tasks. (Service Personnel Only).

**Remarks**

Joint Asset Management and Engineering Solution (JAMES) training is not delivered during the course; however, it should be noted that this course is JAMES compliant. It is strongly recommended that students are familiar with the JAMES processes and terminology, and are trained in the role of Simple Tasks prior to attending the course.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal or MoD employed Civil Servant or Contractor equivalent. Must be employed or about to be employed in an MT environment.</td>
<td>Joint Asset Management and Engineering Solution (JAMES) training is not delivered during the course; however, it should be noted that this course is JAMES compliant. It is strongly recommended that students are familiar with the JAMES processes and terminology, and are trained in the role of Simple Tasks prior to attending the course.</td>
<td>9 working days</td>
<td>Defence MT Junior Transport Operator Competency</td>
<td>12 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM) Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A550**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Junior Non-Commissioned Officer or civilian equivalent.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified MAN SV 6, 9 or 15 Tonne CALM Crane Operator with at least 12 months operating experience. Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or vehicle instructor equivalent. Must have carried out driver conversion on either MAN SV 6, 9 or 15Tonne. Must hold an Instructor qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle CALM Crane (SV) Instructor</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The course is delivered using the MAN SV 6T Flat Platform vehicle variant fitted with a Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM). The differences between the 6, 9 and 15 Tonne CALM platforms are demonstrated during the course.

A 5 day course which is conducted indoors and outdoors. Students will prepare and deliver a series of practical and theory presentations both indoors and outdoors. The course is designed for students to be able to carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation.

On completion of the course students will be able to assess and test CALM Operators.

Previous attendance Kul 2015 (NZ)
Driving Courses

Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM) Operator
Course No: 11T/A551

DCLPA DST Leconfield

Aim of Course
To train qualified MAN SV Drivers to be competent Crane Auxiliary Lorry Mounted (CALM) Operators. The course is delivered using the MAN SV 6Tonne Flat Platform vehicle fitted with a CALM crane.

Outline of Syllabus
This 4 day course is primarily conducted outside in all weathers and will train students to competently and confidently operate a MAN SV vehicle fitted with CALM Mechanical Handling Equipment. The maintenance of the vehicle and CALM is also covered during the course.

Remarks
Previous attendance Kul 2015 (NZ)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Civilian Instructional Staff are authorised to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or vehicle instructor equivalent. Must have carried out driver conversion on either MAN SV 6, 9 or 15Tonne.</td>
<td>4 working days</td>
<td>MAN SV CALM Operator</td>
<td>10 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Driving Courses

**Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver – Tanker**  
*Course No: 11T/0272*  
DCLPA DST Leconfield

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a full LGV category C+E entitlement. Students must have a minimum of 12-months driving experience. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or vehicle instructor equivalent.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver -Tanker</td>
<td>6 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:** Previous attendance Jul 2017 (Germany).

**Outline of Syllabus:**

Over the 5 days students will be taught to drive the Oshkosh 6x6 on road and cross country (Tractor unit only). Driving will be conducted by day and night both on and off road. Self recovery and emergency drill procedures are covered during the instructional periods. Vehicle manoeuvring and coupling/uncoupling of a Close Support Tanker (CST) trailer will also be taught. Driver and operator maintenance responsibilities are taught.

**Aim of Course:**

To train experienced drivers to be competent and qualified Vehicle OSHKOSH 6x6 Tanker Drivers. This is the initial articulated tractor unit and tanker trailer driving only conversion course (excludes any specific practical back-end fill or pump operation training).
Driving Courses

Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver – Transporter
Course No: 11T/0273

DCLPA DST Leconfield

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of the course is to train experienced drivers to be competent and qualified Vehicle OSHKOSH 6x6 transporter drivers. This is the initial articulated tractor unit and transporter trailer driving only conversion course to drive the Modified Light Equipment Transporter (MLET).</td>
<td>Over the 5 days students will be taught to drive the Oshkosh 6x6 (Tractor unit only) on road and cross country. This will include driving an unladen trailer on-road or prepared tracks only both by day and by night but excludes any specific back-end practical loading, unloading or winch training. Self recovery and emergency drill procedures are covered during the instructional periods. Vehicle manoeuvring and coupling/uncoupling a MLET trailer will be practices and assessed. Drive the Oshkosh 6x6 and MLET on road and off road. Driver and operator maintenance responsibilities are taught.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a full LGV category C+E entitlement. Students must have a minimum of 12-months driving experience. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSMD) Module 1 or vehicle instructor equivalent.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver -Transporter</td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vehicle BV 206 (Blackshod) Instructor

Course No: 11R/0024

Aim of Course

To train competent and qualified BV206 (Blackshod) Drivers as Instructors to enable them to deliver BV206 (Blackshod) Driver training in unit under the Distributed Training process.

Outline of Syllabus

 Carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Over the 5 days, potential instructors will be taught specific instructional techniques on the bespoke cross country training area and on public roads. Students will be qualified to conduct BV206 operator training and assessments.

Rank Range

Minimum rank LCpl. Civilian Instructional Staff are entitled to attend.

Entry Standards

Must be a qualified, competent and in date BV206 (Blackshod) Driver capable of passing a BV206 Instructors Course. Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full LGV category C entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Conversion Modules 1 & 2. Must be able to swim. Must have an Instructor qualification.

Duration

5 working days

Qualifications gained

Vehicle BV206 (Blackshod) Instructor

Frequency

5 courses per year

Remarks

Previous attendance Jul 2017 (Germany).
# Driving Courses

## Defence Unit Vehicle Winch Instructor

**Course No: 11T/0006**

**DCLPA DST Leconfield**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum rank LCpl. Civilian Instructional Staff are entitled to attend</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full LGV category C entitlement or national equivalent. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 Conversion or national equivalent. Must be a qualified and in-date Vehicle Winch Operator. Must have completed either MAN SV 6, 9 or 15Tonne driver conversion training. Must hold a recognised instructor qualification. Be familiar with using IT equipment.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Defence Vehicle Winch Instructor competency.</td>
<td>6 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

This classroom based practical and theory based training will allow students to carry out assessments on Vehicle Winch Operators in their delivery of operating a vehicle Winch. They will:

- Conduct a B Vehicle recovery task using a self-recovery winch.
- Carry out Assessments On Potential Defence Vehicle Winch Operators
- Conduct a ‘B’ (wheeled) Vehicle Recovery Tasks (one to one recovery) using the fitted Self-Recovery Winch.
- Maintain and Inspect a ‘B’ (wheeled) Vehicle Self Recovery Winch and associated items.

Students will be required to conduct a formal risk assessment which involves assessing environmental risk and the task in hand. Personal Protection Equipment is provided for the duration of the course.

This is a pre-requisite for the Modified Light Equipment Training (MLET) – OSHKOSH Vehicle.
Driving Courses

Specialist Driver Class 1
Course No: 11T/0007

Aim of Course

To provide personnel the knowledge in how to supervise and conduct the duties of a convoy commander using vehicle, trailers and other equipment under field conditions. Students will learn how to understand the components and systems of wheeled vehicles using general mechanical principles and supervise equipment maintenance standards in accordance with the appropriate and relevant publications.

Outline of Syllabus

This is a specialist trade course allowing students to learn how to maintain vehicles and equipment and carry out operating and administrative procedures. Students will be expected to plan and deploy a Section into an Operational environment utilising the bespoke training area at the Defence School of Transport. Students will enhance their base line military transport training and conduct the following:

- Theory based training covering operating procedures and policy.
- Route reconnaissance covering a 120 mile local area.
- Will be refreshed in their map reading skills.
- Supervise loading and lashing of military vehicles for safety utilising MHE (Material Handling Equipment (forklift)).
- Command and control vehicle.
- Vehicle Maintenance & Inspection.
- Prepare a H&S briefing on Military Transport (MT) Management.
- Inspection of a wheeled vehicle for road worthiness and fault reporting.

Personal Protection Equipment will be provided for the duration of the course.

Remarks

DCLPA DST Leconfield

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Officer, Warrant Officer, Minimum rank LCpl. Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff are entitled to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a full category C+E entitlement or national equivalent. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver Conversion Module 1 or national equivalent. Must have carried out vehicle conversion on a MAN SV 6, 9 or 15 Tonne variant. Must be Land Rover TUL/TUM (HS) trained. Must have been a qualified Driver for at least 12 months.</td>
<td>15 working days</td>
<td>Specialist Driver Class 1 Competency</td>
<td>14 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving Courses

**Specialist Driver Upgrading Class 2 to 1 (Royal Engineer).**

*Course No: 11T/0008*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pte - Sgt Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff can attend.</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement. Must have successfully completed MAN SV conversion on SV 6, 9 or 15 Tonne prior to arrival on the course. Must have successfully completed Land Rover TUL (truck utility light)/TUM (truck utility medium) (HS (high specification)) conversion. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Conversion Module 1. Must have been a qualified driver for at least 12 months.</td>
<td>29 working days</td>
<td>Specialist Driver Class 1 RE Competency</td>
<td>9 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DCLPA DST Leconfield

The course training objectives are that of the 11T/0007 Specialist Driver Class 1 but is specifically for the use of the Royal Engineers vehicles and specialist equipment training. They will learn how to laden and unladen medium dump trucks and self loading dump trucks and carry out operating and administrative procedures in a military transport office.

Students will be driving Royal Engineer vehicles cross country across the bespoke training area at the Defence School of Transport.

The course covers the following on Royal Engineer Vehicles:

- Military Vehicles Maintenance.
- Equipment Maintenance.
- Operating and Administrative Procedures.
- Plan a Section Deployment into an Operational Environment.
- Royal Engineer Vehicle Recovery.

**Remarks**

- Outline of Syllabus
- Aim of Course
## Combat Support Boat (CST) Trailer Operator Driver
### Course No: 11T/0009

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 (STT) personnel – must be minimum rank Substantive OR3 serving in RE and RLC units equipped with CSB Transporting Trailers in order to attend the follow on Instructors course. Civilian Instructional Staff are entitled to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement or national equivalent. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1, or national equivalent. RE Unit - Driver Class 1, Iveco Trakker vehicle SLDT (self loading dump truck)/ DTM (dump truck medium) Driver/Operator trained. RLC Unit - Driver Class 1, (vehicle Towing Platform tbc) Driver/Operator trained.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Combat Support Boat (CSB) Trailer Operator Competency</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Mountain Rescue Emergency Response Driver

**Course No: 11T/0066**

### Aim of Course
The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified RAF Mountain Rescue Response Vehicle Drivers.

### Outline of Syllabus
Drive a Mountain Rescue Emergency Response Vehicle on and off road, under blue light emergency conditions and employing skid correction techniques. Students will also:
- Carry out driver maintenance.
- Carry out vehicle recovery procedures.

### Remarks
- Phase 3 personnel currently serving with or ear-marked to serve with the RAF Mountain Rescue Service.
- Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with at least a full category B (car) entitlement or national equivalent.
- Must have completed Defence General Service Driver Module 1 or national equivalent.
- Be fully conversant with the current version of the Highway Code, and it is advisable that they have studied ‘Roadcraft’ (the Police Drivers Manual).
- Must have at least 3-years’ service remaining.

### Rank Range
- 3 courses per year

### Entry Standards
- RAF Mountain Rescue Emergency Response Driver

### Duration
- 5 working days

### Qualifications gained
- RAF Mountain Rescue Emergency Response Driver

### Frequency
- Phase 3 personnel currently serving with or ear-marked to serve with the RAF Mountain Rescue Service.
Driving Courses

Explosive Ordnance Disposal (EOD) Van Driver
Course No: 11T/0068

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This course operates closely with the local police constabulary and allows students to support and exercise traffic exemptions when driving in emergency situations. This will include driving under escort and/or unescorted 'blue light' response conditions. This course is highly suitable for personnel who are required to drive under 'blue light' conditions for other services and is delivered during day and night time hours. Completion of this course allows students to enrol with the Institute of Advanced Motorists.</td>
<td>Students will learn about the 'Blue Light' policy and the principles of driving in emergency situations on open public roads. After the theory principles, they will drive in Armoured or Soft Skinned military vehicles in and around the local area with an opportunity under 'Blue Light' in order to immerse themselves into a realistic scenario. They will conduct emergency procedures under close observation and exercise the Road Traffic Act throughout the course and learn how to maintain a Defence EOD van. This course is assessed throughout with both theory and practical tests. Due to the nature of the course there is a 2:1 Student to Trainer ratio of instruction delivery.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel - must be selected for employment as an EOD Van Driver within either RN, RAF, RE, RLC or Gibraltar Infantry Regiment EOD roled units.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full Category C1 (unrestricted (7.5 tonne)) entitlement or national equivalent. Driving licence restriction code 78 limits drivers to vehicles with automatic transmissions – DST Leconfield training vehicles have manual transmissions. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion training or national equivalent. Students must be able to meet the UK Driver Standards Agency basic legal eyesight requirement for the Category of licence held.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>EOD Van Driver Competency</td>
<td>22 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Defence BV 206 (Blackshod) Driver

**Course No:** 11T/0077

**Aim of Course**

The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified BV206 (Blackshod) Drivers.

**Outline of Syllabus**

Students will be taught how to drive the BV206 on the bespoke training area and on the public roads. Emergency actions and vehicle guiding will be covered in addition to swim procedures within the restrictions applied to the vehicle. Students will also cover:
- Vehicle maintenance, including track changing
- Vehicle recovery and towing.

**Rank Range**

Minimum rank of LCpl and Civilian Instructional Staff.

**Entry Standards**

- Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full LGV category C entitlement.
- Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Modules 1 & 2 or equivalent qualification.
- Must be able to swim.

**Duration**

5 working days

**Qualifications gained**

Vehicle BV206 (Blackshod) Driver

**Frequency**

18 courses
# Driving Courses

## Defence Licence Acquisition Inst (SS)

**Course No: 11T/0084**

**DCLPA DST Leconfield**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of the course is to train personnel to become competent and qualified Defence Licence Acquisition Instructors. Note. Under current legislation individuals delivering category B driver training commercially must be an Approved Driving Instructor (ADI). As DST does not offer this ADI qualification, MoD approved contractors can only be trained to deliver Vocational driver training.</td>
<td>Pre-Course Requisites. Pass an Advanced Vocational Large Goods Vehicle driving ability test to MOD instructor standards. Pass a Non Vocational Cat B trainer ability test. Train a provisional licence holder to drive a vehicle in accordance with test standards.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum rank of LCpl and Civilian Instructional Staff.</td>
<td>Must hold an instructional qualification. Must be a minimum of 21 years age. Must have no more than 3 current driving penalty points (or equivalent). Must have had no driving disqualifications within the last 4 years (ie. 4 years from the termination point of the ban. Must have an authorised driving licence with full category B (car) entitlement for a minimum of 3 years. Must have held an authorised driving licence with full LGV category C+E entitlement for a minimum of: • Military Personnel and Civil Servant - 2 years. • Civilian Contractors - 3 years.</td>
<td>14 working days</td>
<td>Defence Licence Acquisition Instructor (DLAI)</td>
<td>145 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving Courses

Defence Attaché Staff Advanced Driving

Course No: 11T/0096

Aim of Course
Allowing students to apply evasive defence driving techniques this course will teach students how to react and implement safety procedures whilst applying specialist driving skills in a variety of vehicles on and off road and using the skid pan facilities on site. They will learn to apply advanced driving skills in line with the UK Policy Road Craft Manual.

Outline of Syllabus
During this intense 5 day course students will carry out emergency drills and apply evasive actions in hostile scenarios in a realistic working environment. The course also covers:
- Maintenance of an Attaché Vehicle.
- Carry out vehicle recovery and towing procedures.
- Complete military transport documentation to meet first line assurance.
- Undertake and carry out accident and breakdown procedures.
- Comply with Health & Safety legislation in a military transport environment.
- Maintenance on a General Service (GS) vehicle.
- Position and secure a loose load.
- HAZMAT awareness.
- Theory and practical training on the skid pan.
Training is conducted both day and night time and full Personal Protection Equipment is issued and used for the duration of the course.

Remarks

Rank Range
Nominated personnel only who will become DAs

Entry Standards
Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with at least a full category B (car) entitlement or national equivalent.

Duration
5 working days

Qualifications gained

Frequency
15 courses per year

DCLPA DST Leconfield
## Defence Skid Cradle Instructor

**Course No: 11T/0099**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel - minimum rank Substantive OR3. D Grade Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff are authorised to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued full category B (car) driving licence. Must hold one of the following: DIT/DTTT/DGSDCI/ DMI/ MOI(RAF)/Presentation Skills(RN). The student must have been a DDI, DLAI or DGSDCI for a minimum of 12 months. RM personnel must have passed a Junior Command Course and be Driver D2 trained.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle Skid Cradle Instructor</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving Courses

TFLRT Operator (2400kg)
Course No: 11T/0106

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operators on the JCB 524-50 (Light) platform to include loading and unloading ISO Containers on hard standing and Off-Road. | Students will be taught to drive and operate a JCB 524-50 Rough Terrain Forklift Truck. The following will also be taught:  
- Identifying vehicle components.  
- Manoeuvring in a controlled environment.  
- Preparation of the vehicle for transportation.  
- The stacking and de-stacking of loads in a controlled environment.  
- Driver/operator maintenance responsibilities. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade.</td>
<td>Students must have an authorised LGV category C driver licence. Students must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion training or equivalent qualification.</td>
<td>7 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Op (JCB 524-50)</td>
<td>25 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### TFLRT Operator (4000kg)

**Course No: 11T/0107**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade.</td>
<td>Students must have an authorised LGV category C driver licence. Students must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion training or equivalent qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operator (JCB 541-70)</td>
<td>16 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operators on the JCB 541-70 (Medium) platform.

Students will be taught to drive and operate a JCB 541-70 Rough Terrain Forklift Truck. The following will also be taught:

- Identifying vehicle components.
- Manoeuvring in a controlled environment.
- Preparation of the vehicle for transportation.
- The stacking and de-stacking of loads in a controlled environment.
- Driver/operator maintenance responsibilities.

The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operators on the JCB 541-70 (Medium) platform.
Vehicle Quad Bike Operator
Course No: 11T/0300

**Aim of Course**
The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified Quad Bike Operators. To enable drivers to confidently operate in any environment.

**Outline of Syllabus**
Over the 5 day duration of the course the training is predominately delivered over rough terrain both by day and by night using Night Vision Goggles (NVG) including towing the Quad Bike Trailer.

Students will be taught and assessed in the following areas:
- Operating the Quad Bike systems and controls.
- Conducting Quad Bike and trailer maintenance.
- Conducting riding on a non public road.
- Operating a Quad Bike using NVD.
- Positioning and securing a load on the Quad Bike and Trailer.
- Conducting platform recovery and emergency procedures.

**Rank Range**
Any rank or grade

**Entry Standards**
Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category B entitlement.
Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or vehicle instructor equivalent.

**Duration**
5 working days

**Qualifications gained**
Vehicle Quad Bike Operator

**Frequency**
17 courses per year
Vehicle MHE Forklift JCB (524-50) Op RAF
Course No: 11T/0400

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Students must have an authorised LGV category C driver licence. Students must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion training or equivalent qualification.</td>
<td>7 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operator RAF (JCB 524-50)</td>
<td>25 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Driving Courses

**Civilian Armoured Vehicle Operator**  
**Course No: 11T/0480**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel – minimum rank OR2. Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff are authorised to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full Category C1 (unrestricted (manual as minimum)) entitlement. EU Licensing - Driving licence restriction code 78 limits drivers to vehicles with automatic transmissions – DST Leconfield training CAV (Civilian Armoured Vehicle) vehicles have manual transmissions. (Full category C1 entitlement is automatically awarded if an individual passed the category B driving test before 01 Jan 97, (or national equivalent); those passing after this date must complete a separate category C driving test – the MoD does not train or test to category C1 but to the higher category C that includes the category C1 entitlement). Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or national equivalent</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Civilian Armoured Vehicle Driver Competency</td>
<td>22 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The aim of the course is to teach students to deploy under warfare conditions and operate a 5 tonne armoured car. Using the skills learnt from the course students will be able to operate in hostile conditions using left and right hand drive and manual and automatic transmission vehicles.

Students will experience driving a standard box Toyota Land Cruiser on and off road using the designated training area at the defence School of Transport. Students will:
- Utilise the skid pan area and apply driving techniques under various scenarios.
- Carry out vehicle recovery implementing correct procedures.
- 2 car drills
- Carry out driver maintenance and vehicle recovery.

Full Personal Protection Equipment is issued and will be used throughout the course. The RODET simulator is also available for students to experience immersive training and will practice access and egress drills.
### Transport Specialist

**Course No: 11T/0520**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of the course is to train selected SNCO to be competent and qualified in managing dangerous goods and implementing driving standards, safety policies and campaigns. The modular based training will cover elements of road safety and how to set up convoy support centres and route recce off site. On completion of this course, it is recommend that personnel attend the 11/0054 – Master Driver.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| This 4 week course will see students learn the effective principles in managing a Military Transport (MT) office. The syllabus covers the following:  
- Manage the MT staff and equipment.  
- Manage MT documents to meet first line assurance.  
- Manage driving standards implementing road safety policies and campaigns.  
- Manage H&S in an MT environment.  
- Manage driver licence training and testing.  
- Plan a unit/sub-unit deployment into an operational environment. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Selected RLC SNCO who meet the following criteria:  
- Must be a minimum rank of substantive Cpl selected for promotion to Sgt.  
- Must be a Specialist Class 1 Driver Tradesman. | Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with minimum full category C+E entitlement. | 20 working days | Transport Specialist SNCO Competency | 4 courses per year |
# Vehicle CST (W) Operator

**Course No:** 11T/0721

## Aim of Course

The aim of the course is to train Vehicle OSHKOSH 6x6 Tanker Drivers to be competent and qualified Close Support Tanker (Water) Operators. The course includes some elements of driving but mainly concentrates on trailer filling and pump operation training.

## Outline of Syllabus

During this intense 3 day course students will be taught to operate the CST(W) whilst complying with current Health & Safety requirements. They will be required to locate and utilise the vehicle components in order to conduct pumping operations, specialist cleaning and maintenance procedures. All training will be conducted within a controlled environment both indoors and out.

## Rank Range

Any rank or grade.

## Entry Standards

- Must be a qualified and in-date Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver–Tanker (course number 11T/0272).
- Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement.
- Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or equivalent qualification.

## Duration

3 working days

## Qualifications gained

CST(W) Operator

## Frequency

6 courses per year
Driving Courses

Vehicle WT / MLET (19 Tonne) Operator
Course No: 11T/0722

Aim of Course
The aim of the course is to train OSHKOSH 6x6 Transporter Drivers to be competent and qualified Modified Light Equipment Transporter (MLET) Operators. This course concentrates on driving with a laden trailer by day and by night both on-road and on prepared tracks including the practical trailer elements of loading, unloading, load security and loading by winch training.

Outline of Syllabus
Students will be taught in load security and unloading an MLET trailer. Oversized loads training will also be conducted. Driving the OSK 6x6 and MLET trailer (loaded) on a bespoke training area and on the public roads will be assessed and tested throughout the course duration. Driver/operator maintenance procedures will be taught and tested on the MLET trailer.

Remarks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified and in-date Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver-Transporter (course number 11T/0273) with a minimum of 12 months driving experience. Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or national equivalent.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle MLET Operator</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Driving Courses

### Combat Support Boat (CSB) Trailer Operator Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A009**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel - minimum rank Substantive OR3 serving in RE and RLC units equipped with CSB Transporting Trailers. Civilian Instructional Staff are entitled to attend.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified and in-date CSB Trailer Operator. Must hold a GB or national equivalent issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement or national equivalent. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or national equivalent RE Unit - Driver Class 1, Iveco Trakker vehicle SLDT/DTM Driver/Operator trained. RLC Unit - Driver Class 1, (vehicle towing platform tbc) Driver/Operator trained. Must hold one of the following instructional qualifications: Defence Instructional Techniques (DIT)/Defence Train the Trainer (DTTT)/Defence General Service Driver Conversion Instructor (DGSDCI) or a recognised instructional qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Combat Support Boat (CSB) Trailer Instructor Competency</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complimenting the Defence Systems Approach to Training (DSAT) principles, students will learn how to become effective trainers in this specialised area and learn how to assess in a controlled environment as per the recognised test standards and in accordance with Joint Service Publications.

Students will learn how to prepare and present the training delivery associated with the 11T/009 CSB Trailer Operator Cse. The classroom based training allows students to familiarise themselves with the course administration prior to training delivery including accessing the distributed Training pack and the pre and post course documentation.

Students will be expected to create and deliver a lesson covering the relevant training objectives of the 11T/009 specified.
### Aim of Course

The aim of the course is to train personnel to be competent and qualified in the maintenance of Category ‘B’ Vehicle Inspection programmes in accordance with first line assurance. The course covers the 3rd phase of the 11T/0007 Course.

### Outline of Syllabus

During the course students will learn the objectives of vehicle maintenance and inspection routines. The classroom based training will cover:

- Locate, Identify and State the Function of Components/Systems on an in-service B Vehicle.
- Carry out Time/Usage Maintenance Tasks.
- Carry out Unit B Vehicle Inspections.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel - minimum rank OR3. Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff are authorised to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full category B entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion course. Must have successfully completed Land Rover TUL/TUM (HS) conversion training.</td>
<td>9 working days</td>
<td>‘B’ Vehicle Inspection and Maintenance Operator Competency</td>
<td>8 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving Courses

Defence General Service Driver Conversion Instructor (Steady State)

Course No: 11T/A084

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular and Reserve Phase 3 personnel of minimum substantive rank OR3. Civilian Instructional Staff are entitled to attend.</td>
<td>Must hold one of the following: Defence Instructional Techniques/Defence Train the Trainer/Defence Method of Instruction/Presentation Skills (Royal Navy), Method of Instruction or Defence Workplace Trainer (Royal Air Force) or recognised national equivalent. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 (alternatively hold the equivalent legacy instructors qualification obtained prior to 01 Apr 03). Must have at least 2 years' experience of driving military vehicles. Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with full Category C entitlement for a minimum of 18 months or national equivalent. Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with full Category C+E entitlement for a minimum of 3 months or national equivalent.</td>
<td>10 working days</td>
<td>Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Conversion Instructor Competency</td>
<td>25 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Complimenting the Defence Systems Approach to Training (DSAT) principles, students will learn how to become effective trainers in this specialised area and learn how to assess in a controlled environment as per the recognised test standards and in accordance with Joint Service Publications.

Students will learn how to prepare and present the training delivery associated with the 11T/084 Driver License Acquisition Course. The classroom based training allows students to familiarise themselves with the course administration prior to training delivery including accessing the distributed Training pack and the pre and post course documentation.

This course is delivered day and night and covers the following modules:
- Basic conversion to military vehicles – admin support of vehicle and maintenance.
- Wheel rig – change a wheel, H&S and correct operating procedures
- Cab tilt, load schematics & self recovery
- Trg delivery prior to operation deployment.

Students will use a 6 tonne MAN vehicle whilst on the course and will be expected to create and deliver a lesson covering the relevant training objectives of the 11T/084 specified.

Personal Protection Equipment will be issued for the duration of the course.

To attend this course students must have a driving competency on the MAN SV 6 Tonne vehicle which will be assessed at the beginning of the course. Those that fail will be returned to unit. This course is the pre-requisite for the 11T/A009 Combat Support Boat Trailer Operator Instructor Course.
### Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A100**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of the course is to train qualified CST or MLET Drivers to be competent and qualified Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructors. This is a CST or MLET driving only instructor course. Whilst it includes hitch, unhitch and drive with either a laden/unladen CST(Water) or unladen MLET trailer, it does not include any associated trailer load or unload training.</td>
<td>Carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Potential instructors will conduct OSK 6x6 driver training and assessments. Students will prepare and deliver practical and theory teach back presentations within a controlled environment.</td>
<td>Previous attendance Jul 2017 (Germany).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Must be either a qualified and in-date Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver–Tanker or Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driver–Transporter with a minimum of 12 Months CST or MLET driving experience. Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C+E entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion training or equivalent qualification. Must hold an instructional qualification.</td>
<td>8 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructor</td>
<td>9 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Driving Courses

KALMAR RTCH RT 240 Operator
Course No: 11T/A101

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category C entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 conversion or equivalent qualification. Must be a qualified Rough Terrain Materials Handling Equipment Operator (Forklift Truck) with a minimum of 12 months operating experience.</td>
<td>10 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle Rough Terrain Container Handler (RTCH) Operator</td>
<td>9 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Driving Courses

## TFLRT (2400kg) Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A106**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of the course is to train qualified and experienced Rough Terrain Forklift Operators to be competent and qualified Instructors. The course is delivered using either the JCB 524-50 (Light) platform to include ISO Container loading and unload training or the JCB 541-70 (Medium) without ISO Container training depending on which Operator qualification the individual holds.</td>
<td>Students will carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Conduct MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Operator training and assessments. Students will prepare and deliver both theory and practical teach-backs. Training will be conducted both indoors and outdoors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min rank of LCpl or equivalent civilian grade.</td>
<td>Be a fully qualified and experienced TFLRT JCB 524-50/JCB 541-70 Operator and have operated the equipment on a regular basis in the 12 months prior to attending the course. Must hold an authorised driving licence with minimum full category C entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver Module 1 conversion training or equivalent qualification. Must hold an instructor qualification.</td>
<td>7 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle MHE Forklift Rough Terrain Instructor</td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Vehicle Quad Bike Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A300**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum rank of LCpl and Civilian Instructional Staff.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified, competent and in-date Quad Bike Operator. Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category B entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or equivalent qualification. Must hold an instructional qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle Quad Bike Instructor</td>
<td>14 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Vehicle Sp Veh EPLS Instructor

### Course No: 11T/A440

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To train qualified and experienced Vehicle Enhanced Palletised Load System (EPLS) Operators to be competent instructors by undertaking training in a controlled environment within a bespoke training area.</td>
<td>Students will be taught to carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Day and night practical and theory presentations will be delivered by students over the duration of the 7 day course. Utilising the bespoke training area and public roads students will conduct EPLS Operator training and assessments.</td>
<td>Previous attendance Jul 2017 (Germany).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min rank of LCpl and equivalent civilian grades.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified and in-date EPLS Operator with 12 months recent operating experience. Must hold an authorised driving licence with full category C+E entitlement. Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or equivalent qualification. Must hold an instructional qualification.</td>
<td>7 working days</td>
<td>EPLS Instructor</td>
<td>8 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Driving Courses

**RODET Instructor**  
*Course No: 11T/A470*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train Dismount Battle Drills trained personnel to be competent and qualified “Roll Over Dismount and Egress Trainer” (RODET) instructors. | Students will be taught, assessed and tested in:  
- Locating & identifying RODET components controls and ancillaries.  
- Operating the RODET and conduct egress drills using the RODET.  
- Delivery of drop down drills using the RODET.  
The maintainence of the RODET will also be covered. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min rank of LCpl and equivalent civilian grades.</td>
<td>Must have completed RODET Dismount Battle Drills training before attending this course. Must hold an instructional qualification.</td>
<td>3 working days.</td>
<td>RODET Instructor</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DCLPA DST Leconfield
## Driving Courses

### Civilian Armoured Vehicle Instructor

**Course No: 11T/A480**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Phase 3 personnel - minimum rank of OR3. Civil Servants employed as Instructional Staff are authorised to attend. Must be a qualified and experienced Civilian Armoured Vehicle Driver.</td>
<td>Must have successfully completed the 11T/0480 CAV Driver course. Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with a minimum full Category C1 entitlement. (A full category C1 entitlement will have automatically been awarded by DVLA if an individual passed their category B driving test before 01 Jan 97, those passing category B after this date must complete a separate category C driving test. The MoD does not train or test to category C1 but to the higher category C standard that includes the lower category C1 entitlement). Must have completed Defence General Service Driver (DGSD) Module 1 or national equivalent. Must hold one of the following: Defence Instructional Techniques/Defence Train The Trainer/Defence General Service Driver Conversion Instructor/Defence Method of Instruction/Method of Instruction/Presentation Skills (Royal Navy)</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Civilian Armoured Vehicle Instructor</td>
<td>8 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Students will learn how to prepare and present the training delivery associated with the 11T/0480 Civilian Armoured Operator Course. The classroom based training allows students to familiarise themselves with the course administration prior to training delivery including accessing the distributed Training pack and the pre and post course documentation.

Complimenting the Defence Systems Approach to Training (DSAT) principles, students will learn how to become effective trainers in this specialised area and learn how to assess in a controlled environment as per the recognised test standards and in accordance with Joint Service Publications.

This course concentrates on the theory elements of how to maintain the Civilian Armoured Vehicle and how to drive over rough terrain utilising the Defence School of Transports’ training area.
## Close Support Tanker (Water) Instructor

### Course No: 11T/A721

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min rank of LCpl and equivalent civilian grades.</td>
<td>Must be a qualified and in-date CST (W) Operator (course number 11T/0721) with a minimum 12-months operating experience. Must be a qualified and in-date Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructor (course number 11T/A100). Must hold an instructor qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle CST(W) Instructor</td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Aim of Course

To train qualified and competent Close Support Tanker (Water) (CST(W)) Operators as Instructors. Training is delivered on CST(W) which includes trailer preparation and maintenance and water only pumping operation.

### Outline of Syllabus

Students will be taught to carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Day and night practical and theory presentations will be delivered by students over the duration of the 5 day course. Utilising the bespoke training area and public roads students will conduct CTS(W) Operator training and assessments.

### Remarks

DCLPA DST Leconfield
**Modified Light Equipment Transporter (MLET) Instructor**  
**Course No: 11T/A722**

**Aim of Course**
Using the Modified Light Equipment Transporter (MLET) Operators will qualify as Instructors over a period of 5 days and be competent to train and test MLET Operators.

**Outline of Syllabus**
Students will be taught to carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Day and night practical and theory presentations will be delivered by students over the duration of the 5 day course. Utilising the bespoke training area and public roads students will conduct MLET Operator training and assessments.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Min rank of LCpl and</td>
<td>Must be a qualified and in-date MLET Operator (course number 11T/0722). Must</td>
<td>5 working</td>
<td>Vehicle MLET Instructor</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equivalent civilian grades.</td>
<td>be a qualified and in-date Vehicle OSK 6x6 Driving Instructor (course number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11T/A100).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

DCLPA DST Leconfield
# Driving Courses

## Defence General Service Driver Conversion

**Course No: 11T/P3GS**

**DCLPA DST Leconfield**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train personnel to Defence General Service Driver Conversion Module 1 standard, delivered by default on the MAN 6Tonne General Service vehicle variant. | Students will cover the following:  
• Complete Driver Motor Transport (MT) documentation.  
• Carry out Accident and Breakdown procedures.  
• Comply with The Health and Safety Regulations, within the MT Environment.  
• Identify vehicle components.  
• Carry out Driver/Operator maintenance.  
• Position and Secure a Load.  
• Transport Dangerous Goods below the ADR threshold.  
• Drive a Military Vehicle “On-Road”.  
• Drive a Military Vehicle ‘Cross-Country’. |  |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regular and Reserve Phase 3 personnel.</td>
<td>Must hold a GB issued photocard driving licence with full category C entitlement or national equivalent. Students must meet the minimum legal eyesight requirements for the driving category.</td>
<td>8 working days</td>
<td>Defence General Service Driver Conversion Module 1. MAN SV 6Tonne General Service vehicle conversion. Carriage of Hazardous Goods by Road – Awareness only training.</td>
<td>46 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Defence Fork Lift Truck (FLT) Reach Operator**

**Course No: 11Y/0001**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Must hold an authorised driving licence with a minimum full category B entitlement or national equivalent.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Reach and Tier Operator</td>
<td>14 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To train personnel to be competent and qualified Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Reach and Tier Operators. (Please note the side-facing operator’s seat; this is an electric indoor warehousing machine).

Students will be taught to drive and operate a Industrial Reach and Tier Forklift Truck. The following will also be taught:

- Identifying vehicle components.
- Manoeuvring in a controlled environment.
- Preparation of the vehicle for transportation.
- The stacking and de-stacking of loads in a controlled environment.
- Driver/operator maintenance responsibilities.
# Defence Fork Lift Truck (FLT) Instructor (Industrial)

**Course No: 11Y/0002**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To train qualified and experienced Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Counterbalance Operators as Instructors. (Please note the forward facing driver/operators seat and be advised that this is a warehousing and yard working machine – the course covers both electric and diesel variants).</td>
<td>Carry out course administration including accessing the Distributed Training Pack, pre and post documentation. Conduct MHE Forklift (Ind) Counter Balance Operator training and assessments. Students will prepare and deliver both theory and practical teach-backs.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade</td>
<td>Be a fully qualified and experience (industrial) Counterbalance Fork Materials Handling Equipment (MHE) Operator and have operated the equipment on a regular basis in the 12 month period prior to attending the course. Must hold an authorised Driver Licence with a minimum full category B entitlement. Must have an instructor qualification.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Counterbalance Instructor</td>
<td>7 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Defence FLT Operator (Industrial)

Course No: 11Y/0003

**Aim of Course**
To train personnel to be competent and qualified Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Reach and Tier Operators. (Please note the side-facing operator’s seat; this is an electric indoor warehousing machine).

**Outline of Syllabus**
Drive an Industrial Counter Balance Forklift Truck. The following will also be taught:
- Identifying vehicle components.
- Manoeuvring in a controlled environment.
- Preparation of the vehicle for transportation.
- The stacking and de-stacking of loads in a controlled environment.
- Driver/operator maintenance responsibilities.
- Electric and petrol versions will be covered.

**Rank Range**
Any rank or grade

**Entry Standards**
Must hold an authorised Driver Licence with a minimum full category B entitlement.

**Duration**
5 working days

**Qualifications gained**
Vehicle Forklift (Industrial) Counterbalance Operator

**Frequency**
33 courses per year
# Clerk Of Works (Construction)

**Course No: 410/008**

**RSME Chatham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Staff Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td>94 weeks</td>
<td>University of Greenwich Foundation Degree in Construction Management. CITB Construction. Site Managers Safety Certificate.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Clerk Of Works (Electrical)

**Course No: 410/106**

**RSME Chatham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Staff Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Experience equivalent to a Royal Engineers’ Class 2 qualification as an Electrician or Draughtsman Electrical &amp; Mechanical. Preferably Class 1.</td>
<td>97 weeks</td>
<td>University of Greenwich Foundation Degree in Electrical Engineering</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To instruct Non Commissioned Officers in the duties of a Military Clerk of Works (Electrical).

Each student gains a thorough knowledge of the theoretical and practical applications of Electrical Engineering including:
- Switch gear and lighting schemes.
- Discrimination and protective devices.
- Internal and external wiring.
- Transformers, rectifiers and sub-stations.
- High and low voltage overhead line and power-cable distribution networks.
- Aeronautical ground lighting and traffic control systems.
- All generators, motors and starters including control techniques.
- Operational and supervisory experience on direct engine generating plant.
- Basic mechanical engineering including water supply and treatment, boiler-house practice, pumping engines, heating, ventilation, refrigeration and air conditioning, plus control aspects.
- Managerial training in site supervision, organisation of work and labour, maintenance techniques, and contract procedures.
- Understand conditions of contracts and contract procedures.
- Basic appreciation of Civil Engineering.
- Project Planning and Management.
- Quality control of all electrical works, including the direct supervision of electricians.

Operational and supervisory experience on direct engine generating plant.

Basic mechanical engineering including water supply and treatment, boiler-house practice, pumping engines, heating, ventilation, refrigeration and air conditioning, plus control aspects.

Managerial training in site supervision, organisation of work and labour, maintenance techniques, and contract procedures.

Understand conditions of contracts and contract procedures.

Basic appreciation of Civil Engineering.

Project Planning and Management.

Quality control of all electrical works, including the direct supervision of electricians.

Operational and supervisory experience on direct engine generating plant.

Basic mechanical engineering including water supply and treatment, boiler-house practice, pumping engines, heating, ventilation, refrigeration and air conditioning, plus control aspects.

Managerial training in site supervision, organisation of work and labour, maintenance techniques, and contract procedures.

Understand conditions of contracts and contract procedures.

Basic appreciation of Civil Engineering.

Project Planning and Management.

Quality control of all electrical works, including the direct supervision of electricians.
Clerk Of Works (Mechanical)
Course No: 410/003

RSME Chatham

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To instruct Non Commissioned Officers in the duties of a Military Clerk of Works (Mechanical). | Phase 1: Foundation Stage (within the Science and Computer Branch) • Physics, Maths, Mechanics, Materials, Controls, Computers.  
Phase 2: General Mechanical Engineering • Thermodynamics  
• Climatology  
• Heating and domestic hot water supplies  
• Ventilation and air conditioning  
• Refrigeration and cold storage  
• Hydraulics, water supply and bulk fuel supply  
• Power transmission machinery  
• Production and utilisation of steam  
• Engineering Workshop Practice  
Phase 3: Associated Technology • Managerial training in site supervision, organisation of works and labour, maintenance techniques, workshop management including inspection and quality control and procedures  
• Civil Engineering.  
• Electrical Engineering (working knowledge only on subjects covered by Clerk of Works (Electrical)).  
Phase 4: Confirmation • Civilian Attachment • Final Integrated Project | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Staff Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Experience equivalent to a Royal Engineers’ Class 1 qualification in a Mechanical or Fitter or Draughtsman Electrical &amp; Mechanical trade.</td>
<td>90 training weeks</td>
<td>University of Greenwich Foundation Degree in Building Services Engineering. Site Safety Certificate (CITB).</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Military Engineer (Bricklayer and Concreter) Class R

**Course No: 6358**

**RSME Chatham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train Soldiers in Bricklaying, Concreting and Scaffolding to enable them to provide a safe and competent performance with the minimum of supervision. | The course aims to provide an understanding in all the following relevant units:  
- Use trade tools, materials and equipment  
- Plan bricklaying and concreting tasks  
- Set out for basic structures  
- Build basic masonry structures using bricks and blocks  
- Construct basic concrete structures using proprietary formwork  
- Construct and inspect basic scaffolding  
- Observe Health and Safety requirements. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Lance Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>33 weeks</td>
<td>Intermediate Construction Award in Trowel Occupations</td>
<td>6 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Military Engineer (Electrician)

**Course No: 7374**

**RSME Chatham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To prepare selected Engineer soldiers with the necessary technical and practical skills to install electrical, power generation and distribution systems in operations during peace and war. | Each student gains a thorough knowledge of the theoretical and practical applications of:  
- Assessment.  
- Workshop Skills  
- Direct Current Theory  
- Direct Current Machines  
- Alternating Current Theory  
- Alternating Current Motors  
- Electronics  
- Drawing  
- Practical Installations Work  
- Inspection and Testing  
- Underground Cables  
- Military Power Generation and Distribution. | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>6 week assessment followed by 36 weeks Course</td>
<td>City and Guilds 2330 Part 1 and Part 2 Electrical Installations NVQ Level 3</td>
<td>Approximately 10 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Military Engineer (Fitter General) Class 2

**Course No: 7370**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Lance Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>4 week assessment followed by 32 week course</td>
<td>NVQ Level 2 in Engineering Maintenance</td>
<td>Approximately 8 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To prepare selected Engineer soldiers with the necessary technical and practical skills to carry out fitting tasks in operations during peace and war.

Each student gains a thorough knowledge of the theoretical and practical applications of:

- Installation of mechanical and electrical equipment including electrical generators up to 50kW and water supply equipment
- Operation of mechanical and electrical plant equipment as above
- Rectification of faults on equipment and vehicle electric/electronic systems
- Fitting tasks on mechanical equipment including engines, Engineer construction plant, hydraulic systems, pumps, electrical generating sets, water supply equipment and plant vehicles
- Routine maintenance on mechanical equipment as listed above
- Testing of mechanical equipment listed above
- Planning and advising on fitting tasks
- Water supply and purification.
Military Engineer (Plant Operator Mechanic) Class 2

**Course No: 6356**

**RSME Chatham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To train soldiers to operate, manage and maintain in service C vehicles in support of peace time and war fighting operations.</td>
<td>Servicing, maintaining and operating in service C vehicles.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Small hand tools (Basic use and ID) Basic manual and auto transmissions hydraulics, engines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Medium Crawler tractor, management, servicing, compaction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• 360˚ Crawler Excavator</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• LWT Light Wheeled tractor, MWT Medium Wheeled tractor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Plant Exercise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Apprenticeship in specialised Plant &amp; Machinery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Intermediate Certificate Specialised Plant &amp; Machinery Operations. Excavator 360˚ above 10 ton</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• NVQ, QUA, 762 Plant Operations Level II.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rank Range** | **Entry Standards** | **Duration** | **Qualifications gained** | **Frequency** |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Holder of a current Driving Licence - Category C.</td>
<td>18 weeks</td>
<td>NVQ 2. CPCS Red Card</td>
<td>10 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Military Plant Foreman

**Course No: 6301**

- **Aim of Course:** To train Senior Non-Commissioned Officers for appointments as a Military Plant Foreman.

- **Outline of Syllabus:**
  - The student is given a thorough theoretical and practical knowledge in:
    - Operating, servicing, maintaining, and repairing earthmoving construction plant
    - Preparing bills of quantities for construction projects
    - Carrying out site investigations, preparing specifications for highway works and technical design and works reports
    - Designing surface, sub-surface drainage and dewatering
    - The management of quarries including, environmental prediction, blast design specifications, locating, winning, developing and producing aggregate
    - Planning and supervising the recovery of all plant and preparing machines for transport by road, rail, sea or air
    - Preventing and investigating accidents
    - Plan and manage the construction of rigid and flexible pavements including soil stabilisation
    - Trained in soil mechanics, the theory of road, bridge, railway, tunnels and airfield design
    - Being competent to manage a work-site including maintenance, storage, access, force protection, technical accommodation and resources
    - Supervision of practical piling tasks.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Staff Sergeant, Sergeant or Corporal selected for promotion</td>
<td>IELTS level 7. Holder of a driving licence. Plant and construction experience in a supervisory capacity. Advanced Tradesman and completion of Plant Sergeants Course.</td>
<td>68 weeks</td>
<td>University of Greenwich Foundation Degree in Civil Engineering, EPIC Explosive Supervisor and Shotfirer. CITB Site Safety Supervisors Certificate.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Professional Engineer Training (Civil) MSc
Course No: 6103
RSME Chatham

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 7. Equivalent of a UK BSc(Eng) or B Eng/M Eng in a relevant subject. Copies of certificates and degree transcripts should be sent to IDT(A) at the time of application. Final acceptance will be made by Cranfield University which validates MSc and the Institution of Civil Engineers whose academic requirements for membership must be satisfied.</td>
<td>2 years (112 weeks)</td>
<td>The Institute of Civil Engineers recognises attendance on this course towards its requirements for Chartered Membership. MSc in Military Construction Engineering.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To prepare Specialist Engineering Officers to design, plan and control a wide variety of Civil Engineering tasks. The course culminates in the award of an MSc in 'Military Construction Engineering' and if successful, attainment of Chartered Engineer status and Membership of the Institution of Civil Engineers.

The training is in 4 phases:

- **Phase 1:** 6 months spent at the RSME undertaking post graduate engineering studies. Failure at this stage will preclude the student from continuing with the course.
- **Phase 2:** 9 months spent on attachment to a Civil Engineering Contractor’s Site in the post of a Site Engineer (or similar). The student will be required to deal with other engineers and workmen at all levels. The student is required to submit a number of site and technical experience reports. Students should be aware that Phase 2 of this course can involve very long hours of work on cold remote construction sites where they will be taught and directed by civilians.
- **Phase 3:** 7 months spent on attachment to a Civil Engineering Consultancy as a Design Engineer. The student will be required to produce drawings, design calculations, specifications and bills of quantities for real projects, whilst completing further written work including preparation of MSc thesis.
- **Phase 4:** 2 weeks spent at the RSME in which students present on their attachments and may receive a viva voce on their thesis.
## Professional Engineering Training (Electrical and Mechanical) MSc

### Course No: 7101

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 7. Equivalent of a UK BSc(Eng) or B Eng in a relevant subject. Copies of certificates should be sent to IDT (A) at the time of application. The RSME has spent many years building up valuable goodwill with the Civilian Consultants and Contractors to whom officers attending this course have been attached. It is therefore vital that any student attending the course should have suitable knowledge, experience, confidence and character to integrate well with these organisations.</td>
<td>108 weeks</td>
<td>MSc in Military Construction Engineering from Cranfield University, The Institution of Mechanical Engineers, the Institution of Engineering &amp; Technology and the Chartered Institute of Building Services Engineers recognise attendance on this course towards their requirements for Chartered Membership.</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The training is in 4 phases:

- **Phase 1:**
  8 months spent at the RSME covering written and design work in lectures and tutorials. Failure to achieve a suitable standard in this phase will preclude the student from continuing with the course.

- **Phase 2:**
  8 months spent on attachment to a Design Consultant working on electrical and/or mechanical designs to C Eng level.

- **Phase 3:**
  8 months spent on attachment to a contractor working on site on electrical and/or mechanical construction to C Eng level.

- **Phase 4:**
  2 weeks at the RSME during which the student is required to present a MSc dissertation written during his attachments. Additionally the student will be briefed on current military issues.

To prepare Specialist Engineering Officers to design, plan and control a wide variety of Electrical and Mechanical Engineering tasks.

RSME Chatham
### Aim of Course
To equip Engineer Officers with the necessary technical, supervisory and administrative skills to command an Engineer Troop.

### Outline of Syllabus

- **The Principles of construction and military engineering:**
  - Project planning including the construction of military and civilian camps. Emphasis is placed on critical path analysis coupled with verbal and written communication skills.
  - Personnel and equipment management and MS reporting with emphasis on the routine business of a RE Troop Comd.
  - Humanitarian and Disaster Relief exercise to test contingency planning skills.
  - Combat and logistic bridge design and construction.
  - Route reconnaissance, simple road design and construction including culverts using earthmoving equipment.
  - Designing, planning and supervising the construction of fortifications including the hardening of existing structures.
  - Health and safety with special emphasis on construction sites.
  - Students gain the British Demolition Safety Officer Qualification which includes the application of explosives theory and effect. They are also offered the opportunity to gain the civilian accredited APMP qualification.
  - Planning and control of military engineering tasks including two practical field exercises. The first aims to consolidate training in a military construction context; the second tests combat engineering within an all-arms battlefield environment.
  - Virtual application of command in a battlefield environment using the VBS2 system.

### Remarks
International students are fully integrated and will get a thorough understanding of British Military ethos and doctrine.

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Second Lieutenant to Captain | IELTS level 6. A sound understanding of technical subjects (specifically maths) and high standards of physical fitness. | 27 weeks | Demolition Safety Officer. Watermanship Safety Officer. | 3 courses per year
# Demolition Safety Officer

**Course No: Tp 1107/ Sgts 1307**

## Outline of Syllabus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remarks</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Training is based on the assumption that some or all of the students will not have handled explosive before.</td>
<td>To train students in the rules, procedures and responsibilities of the officer in charge of planning and executing military tasks and training using explosive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course content includes:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Safe use of explosive including:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Explosive theory and the theory of initiation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Use of explosives, accessories and equipment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Safety precautions and procedures.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Safe detonation of explosive involving:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Preparation of initiation sets and circuits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Initiation of firing circuits.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Supervision and conduct of Battle noise Simulation (BATSIM) using explosive covering:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- BATSIM techniques, including safety rules and precautions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Preparation and firing of BATSIM charges</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Reconnoitring, planning and safely carrying out BATSIM using explosive.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Planning and carrying out tasks using explosive entailing:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The duties and procedures involved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Reconnaissance and planning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Charge calculations and the effects of explosive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Destroying misfires and using explosive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Explosive Methods of Entry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Track cutting.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Aim of Course

To train students in the rules, procedures and responsibilities of the officer in charge of planning and executing military tasks and training using explosive.

## Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant and above</td>
<td>Students must:</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>There are eleven assessments, tests and examinations:</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Have a good understanding of written and spoken English.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Three planning exercises, each assessed practically.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Be one of:</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Two practical assessments; one on exercise the other a demolition range day.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A military engineer SNCO with an advanced combat engineer qualification.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Two practical tests; one on fault finding and one on misfires.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A military Warrant Officer (WO) or officer.</td>
<td></td>
<td>• Three written examinations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A civilian with the status and experience of a WO or above.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Junior Commanders Course

**Course No: 2321**

**RSME Minley**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance Corporal selected</td>
<td>Basic Engineer knowledge</td>
<td>20 working days</td>
<td></td>
<td>11 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>promotional to Corporal</td>
<td>(equivalent to ME CBT CL3)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Managing Successful Programmes (MSP) Commanders Course

**Course No: 7201**

## Outline of Syllabus

- Programmes - An overview
- Defining a programme
- Identifying a programme
- Programme organisations
- Programme vision
- Benefits management
- Realising benefits
- Programme blueprints
- Leadership and stakeholder engagement
- Programme planning and control
- Business cases
- Managing tranches
- Delivering capability
- Programme risk and issue management
- Quality and assurance
- Closing a programme

## Aim of Course

To provide recognised best practice guidance on programme management, in order for MOD to improve its execution of programme management across defence.

## Remarks

To provide recognised best practice guidance on programme management, in order for MOD to improve its execution of programme management across defence.

## Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Maj or WO2 or above</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Minimum rank of OR-8 or F-3 for Military personnel. In a role (or about to take up post) where formal programme management training is directly beneficial. Complete pre-course reading. Prior achievement of APMP or other project management qualification.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>APMG International Managing Successful Programmes (MSP) Practitioner Certificate</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Basic Trade

*Course No:*

### Aim of Course
The school delivers trade specific training aimed at the Land environment for Vehicle Mechanic (VM), Electronic Technician (Elect Tech), Armourer (Armr), Metalsmith (MSm), Recovery Mechanic (RMech) and Technical Supply Specialist (TSS). Basic trade courses are designed to cater for personnel with limited or no experience of engineering; and build upon taught basic engineering principles in order to develop trainees into Class 3 tradesmen (to work under supervision) within their trade group.

### Outline of Syllabus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Remarks</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks</td>
<td>Booked via IDT(raf).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR2-3</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Class 1 (Upgrader)

### Course No:
DSEMELyneham

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The Class 1 (Cl1) courses develop Class 2 (Cl2) experienced tradesmen (gained at unit level) in the VM, Elect Tech, Armr, M5m, R5ech and TSS trades, into tradesmen suitable to work unsupervised; supervise others and certify standards of work. Tradesmen arriving on their Cl1 course should be suitably experienced in their trade cohort and be recommended for further trade training. | | Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks
Booked via IDT(RAF). |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3-4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Artificer
Course No: DSEME Lyneham

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Run specifically for the VM, Tech Elect and Armr trade groups within DSEME Lyneham. The Artificer courses build upon previous CII course content and engineering knowledge gained whilst at units in order to give a broader range of trade knowledge. Emphasis on the artificer courses is also placed on engineering management and in depth understanding across a wide range of subjects. Course loading for the artificer course is via a stringent selection process and are qualified at HND Level 5 (VM &amp; Armr) and Bachelor of Science (BSc) for Elect Tech.</td>
<td>Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum OR6 (OR4 may be promoted to attend)</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Engineering Courses

#### Equipment

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR2-9</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks

Booked via IDT(RAF).

These courses are designed to maintain and repair a range of electronic and mechanical equipment as held at unit level. There are also courses covering further techniques and development for the MSm and RMech trade groups. Courses vary in length depending on equipment complexity and depth of maintenance required; and are usually trade exclusive (although not always); with prerequisites placed on trade group and standard (C13, C12, C11) and previous experience. There is some capability to tailor these equipment courses to meet specific needs or select certain modules as required.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- [DSEME Lyneham](#)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Engineer management and engineering support management courses that provide the necessary skills and technical understanding to enhance engineering processes, procedures and efficiencies or understand the military equipment material concepts and doctrine.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Course No: | DSEME Lyneham |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR6-OF4</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Health and Safety

**Course No:**

### Aim of Course

Two workplace safety advisors or safety managers courses applicable to the military engineering environment. Both courses are designed to be all Arms or attended by civilian equivalents. These courses provide a very good foundation for further advancement in the G4 and/or H&S sphere in support of the MOD. There is also the opportunity to attend British Safety Council H&S examinations on completion of these courses.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Course lengths range from 1 day to 70+ Weeks
- Booked via IDT(RAF).

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
OR6-OF4 | IELTS level 5.5 | | | |
## All Arms Basic Bookkeeper

**Course No: 420/084**

### Aim of Course
To provide training in the principles and maintenance of Non Public Basic Bookkeeping and the basic principles of auditing.

### Outline of Syllabus
- Status of Service Funds
- Entering of Financial Transactions
- Maintenance of Subsidiary Books
- Compilation of Profit Forecasts
- Cash Flow Statements
- Auditing Service Funds Accounts.

### Remarks
This course is a pre-requisite for attendance on the Regimental Administrative Officers Course and the Regimental Accountants Course.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Officers, Warrant Officers and Senior Non Commissioned Officers</td>
<td>IELTS level 6.5</td>
<td>8 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>26 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Fund Manager

**Course No: 420/069**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 6.5</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>12 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Finance & Admin Courses

## Regimental Accountant

**Course No:** 420/030  
**DCLPA Worthy Down**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To provide training in advanced Service Funds accounting techniques. | • Maintain a set of centralised accounts  
• Give advice on Service Funds  
• Prepare an account for audit  
• Calculate a function costing  
• Maintain a Mess Bill Summary Book  
• Calculate stock prices  
• Complete a cash flow statement  
• Complete a profit planning statement. | Students must have attended and passed the Service Funds Course prior to attendance on this course. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Officers, Warrant Officers and Senior Non Commissioned Officers</td>
<td>IELTS level 6.5</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>9 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Regimental Administrative Officer  
Course No: 420/004

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 6.5</td>
<td>14 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

Students must have attended and passed the All Arms Basic Bookkeepers Course and Unit Imprest Operators Course prior to attendance on this course.
### All Arms Skill At Arms Instructor

**Course No: 478/001**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. To be skilled in the handling and shooting of personal weapons.</td>
<td>Module 1: 2 Weeks</td>
<td>Students will be graded Distinction, Qualified or Not Qualified. Students will also receive certain live firing qualifications: Qualified to conduct live firing on indoor, Gallery and Electronic Target Ranges. Qualified to act as safety supervisor during LFTT Exercises.</td>
<td>3 courses per TY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

- Module 1: DTTTv2,
### Infantry Warrant Officer

**Course No: 478/020**

**Aim of Course**

To prepare Infantry Senior Non Commissioned Officers, selected for promotion to Warrant Officer for the appointment of Company Sergeant Major at Regimental duty.

**Outline of Syllabus**

On completion of the course, the student will have been instructed in sufficient subject matter to carry out the responsibilities of a Company Sergeant Major at Regimental duty.

In particular this will cover:
- Operational duties
- Supervisory management duties
- Company administrative duties.

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Colour Sergeant/Staff Sergeant or equivalent to Warrant Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 5. No formal pre-course training is required but the student must be:</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>Students are not graded pass or fail but a statement of attendance is recorded in personal documents</td>
<td>4 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>An experienced Senior Non Commissioned Officer who has been selected for the appointment of Colour Sergeant Major or equivalent.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Live Firing Tactical Training (LFTT)

**Course No: 478/008**

## Aim of Course

To qualify students in range conduct and safety procedures, conduct and supervision of firing infantry weapons.

## Outline of Syllabus

- Planning and conduct of the live firing of Infantry hand held anti-armour weapons and the throwing of live grenades on purpose built ranges.
- Construction of weapon danger area templates.
- Application of the principles of range safety to all aspects of battle shooting.
- Planning, conduct and supervision of Live Firing Tactical Training exercises, including flanking and overhead fire with the general purpose machine gun, (tripod mounted). Destruction of blinds and misfires of ammunition.

## Remarks

A written report will be produced at the end of the course. Students will be graded Distinction, Passed, Attended Not Qualified.

Students will also receive certain live firing qualifications.

## Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant to Officer</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Some knowledge and experience of methods of instruction.</td>
<td>5 weeks</td>
<td>A written report will be produced at the end of the course. Students will be graded Distinction, Passed, Attended Not Qualified. Students will also receive certain live firing qualifications</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Platoon Commander Battle Course

Course No: 478/034

IBS Brecon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To train officers in the operational and administrative duties of a rifle platoon commander in order to meet the operational requirements of the Infantry, the Army and Defence.</td>
<td>The course includes 1 week pretraining, 10 weeks Tactics and 5 weeks Live Firing Tactical Training as follows: Key Training Themes:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Understand and apply Tactics Techniques and Procedures for a Light Role Infantry Platoon • Command in major combat operations • Conduct platoon administration • Conduct platoon training.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2nd Lieutenant to Capt</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Students must be experienced in handling small arms and must have had some experience of live firing. Students must have undergone basic training in Map Reading, First Aid and Signals. Students must have a high level of physical fitness. During the course the students must complete an 8 mile run, carrying 25 kgs in 2 hours if they are to deploy to Battle Camp.</td>
<td>14 weeks</td>
<td>Comprehensive written reports will be sent to the appropriate authorities. Students will be Qualified or Not Qualified. In addition a Pass with Distinction may be given. Live Firing Qualifications may be awarded.</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Platoon Sergeant Battle Course

**Course No: 478/004**

**Aim of Course**

To train Non Commissioned Officers in the operational and administrative duties of an Infantry Platoon Sergeant in order to meet the operational requirements of the Infantry, Army and Defence.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The course has 5 weeks Live Firing Tactical Training and 7 weeks tactics arranged as follows:
- Phase 1 Tactics with a Battle Camp (7 weeks)
- Phase 2 Live Firing Tactical Training (5 weeks).

Key Training Themes:
- Support the Platoon Commander and be prepared to command and control a Dismounted Close Combat (DCC) rifle platoon on major combat operation
- Administer a DCC rifle platoon on major combat operations.

**Remarks**

To train Non Commissioned Officers in the operational and administrative duties of an Infantry Platoon Sergeant in order to meet the operational requirements of the Infantry, Army and Defence.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Have had at least 4 years experience as an Infantry soldier.</td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
<td>A written report will be produced at the end of the course. Students will be graded Distinction, Qualified or Not Qualified.</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
81mm Mortar Platoon Commander Course
Course No: 477/007

Aim of Course
To train students to command a mortar platoon and act as a Mortar Fire Controller (MFC) in all phases of war. Plan, Conduct and Supervise 81mm Live Firing.

Outline of Syllabus
To qualify officers and Warrant officers in the Operational and administrative duties of a 81mm platoon commander and second in command in Order to meet the Operational requirements of the Field Army.

- Operate the 81mm and 60mm mortars
- Apply battle procedure at Platoon and Battle Group Level
- Apply Security and protection measures
- Command an 81mm and 60mm mortar platoon during offensive operations
- Command an 81mm and 60mm mortar platoon during defensive operations
- Command an 81mm and 60mm mortar platoon during an advance to contact
- Administer a mortar platoon in all phases of war.

Remarks
Limited availability
1 per course

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Warrant Officer to Captain | IELTS level 6. Students must be experienced in handling the 81mm weapon system. They must have extensive experience in live firing. They must have experience in Fire Control and its associated equipments. Students will be tested in a number of areas which include general knowledge and map reading, officers must have experience in operating as a rifle platoon commander for at least two years, second in command must have extensive experience of operating as an AMFC and Section commander for at least two years before attending the platoon commanders course. They must also be competent in the use of Bowman along with a high level of physical fitness. | 10 Weeks | Mor Pl Comd/2I/C - 1363 Mor (A) (07) – 2592 Mor (B) (07) – 2593 Mor (C) (07) - 2594 Mor (D) (07) - 2815 Mor (E) (07) – 2595 Mor (F) 07 |
### JAVELIN Platoon Commander/2 IC

**Course No: 477/027**

#### Aim of Course

To train students to command a JAVELIN Platoon in all operations of war. Plan, Conduct and supervise JAVELIN live firing. Monitor the planning and conduct of Anti-Tank Pl training.

#### Outline of Syllabus

- Operate JAVELIN equipment.
- Manage the delivery of training
- Apply battle procedure at Battle Group level
- Conduct Anti-Armour planning
- Engage in high intensity operations as part of a Combined Arms Battle Group
- Command on Combat Operations
- Administer an Anti-Tank Platoon in the field and in barracks
- Plan Javelin Live Firing.

#### Remarks

- Limited availability
- 1 per course

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
---|---|---|---|---
Officers and SNCOs | IELTS level 6. Students must have had some experience of live firing. Students must have undergone basic training in Map Reading, First Aid and Signals. Students must have a high level of physical fitness. | 8 weeks | Comprehensive written reports will be sent to the appropriate authorities. Students will be Qualified or Not Qualified. In addition a Pass with Distinction may be given. Live Firing Qualifications may be awarded. | 3 courses per year
# International Sniper Section Commander Course (ISSCC)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To expose and train international Officers and NCO’s in British Army military skills and instructional technique’s in order to develop their ability to plan and conduct training and operations in command of a sniper section or platoon. To give all students the opportunity to practice and test their military skills, both in camp and on field exercises. To improve their marksmanship skills with the .338 L115A3 Sniper Rifle.</td>
<td>The course is designed to demonstrate and teach methods of command and management of a sniper section or platoon in the land environment in conjunction with current UK tactics and doctrine. Students will leave the course with the ability to train snipers in basic and advanced marksmanship skills and fieldcraft as well as command at section and platoon level on operations.</td>
<td>Candidates need to have completed British Army Sniper Operator Course</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rank Range**

| OR4 - OR6 | IELTS level 5.5. | 4 weeks |

**Qualifications gained**

**Frequency**

**SWS Warminster**
Sniper Platoon Commander Course (SPCC)

Course No:

Aim of Course:
To expose and train international Officers and NCO's in British Army military skills and instructional technique's in order to develop their ability to plan and conduct training and operations in command of a sniper section or platoon.
To give all students the opportunity to practice and test their military skills, both in camp and on field exercises.
To improve their marksmanship skills with the .338 L115A3 Sniper Rifle.

Outline of Syllabus:
The course is designed to demonstrate and teach methods of command an management of a sniper section or platoon in the land environment in conjunction with current UK tactics and doctrine. Students will leave the course with the ability to plan the training for snipers in basic and advanced marksmanship skills and fieldcraft. They will also be able to command a sniper platoon on operations.

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
ORS - OF2 | IELTS level 5.5. | 4 weeks | | —
# All Arms Basic Tactics Instructors’ Course (AA BTIC)

**Course No:** IBS Brecon

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Aim of Course</strong></th>
<th><strong>Outline of Syllabus</strong></th>
<th><strong>Remarks</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To expose and train both UK and international officers and NCO's in British Army basic military skills and instructional techniques in order to develop their ability and competencies in appointment as instructors in military training establishments.</td>
<td>The course is designed to demonstrate and teach the latest Infantry Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTP’s) for the rural and urban interface based on current UK tactics and doctrine. The course will consist of some classroom based theory lessons, demonstrations and practical application of the new knowledge taught on the local Sennybridge Training Area (SENTA). Trainees will leave the course as basic Infantry operations subject matter experts (SME’s) able to advise on TTP’s at Section, Platoon and Company level.</td>
<td>The 3 week course is broken down into sections allowing students to focus on a specific aspect of each subject in a progressive and assured manner. Students will use UK issued weapons during the course but are invited to bring any supporting equipment they feel will help them on the course.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Rank Range</strong></th>
<th><strong>Entry Standards</strong></th>
<th><strong>Duration</strong></th>
<th><strong>Qualifications gained</strong></th>
<th><strong>Frequency</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR4 – OF2</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Students should be fully fit on arrival. Formally trained and passed their own Nations basic instructional course.</td>
<td>3 Weeks</td>
<td>International Basic Tactics Instructors Certificate.</td>
<td>3 Courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Urban Operations Instructors’ Course (UOIC)

**Course No: 491/007**

**Aim of Course**

To expose and train international Officers and NCO’s in the application of British Army Military skills and Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTP’s) when conducting defensive and offensive operations in the Urban Environment (UE) at section and platoon level appointment as instructors in military training establishments.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The course is designed to teach current Tactics, Techniques and Procedures in the Urban Environment. The course looks at both defensive and offensive operations. The course is syndicate based with some classroom based lessons with the majority of instruction being practical demonstrations and confirmatory exercises at the urban training facility on Sennybridge Training Area (SENTA).

**Remarks**

The four week course is broken down into sections allowing students to focus on a specific aspect of each Urban subject in a progressive and assured manner. Students will use UK issued weapons during the course but are invited to bring any supporting equipment they feel will help them in the course.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 – OF2</td>
<td>IELTS level 5.5. Students should be fully fit. Formally trained and passed their own Nations basic instructional course.</td>
<td>4 Weeks</td>
<td>International Urban Operations Instructors Certificate.</td>
<td>2 courses per year based on demand</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Jungle Warfare Instructors Course (Brunei) (JWIC)

**Course No:** 492/001

#### Aim of Course
To train selected officers and NCOs to act as sub-unit advisors in the planning, conduct and training for operations in tropical close country.

#### Outline of Syllabus
Students will spend most of the course under the jungle canopy. After a short acclimatisation period they will progress to the individual and section skills phase of the course. They will learn to instruct in subjects such as jungle navigation, casualty evacuation and contact drills. In the second phase of the course students will practise platoon level operations and learn to conduct offensive and defensive operations in the jungle environment, culminating in a live firing platoon attack. The final exercise lasts for 8 days and tests all the skills learned on the course. On completion of the course, students remain to complete a 3-day water safety officers’ course.

#### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Corporal to Major | IELTS level 5.5. Students should be fully fit on arrival, as the course is physically demanding and students should be prepared to live in the field. | 7 weeks including a 4 day pre-course |  | 2 courses per year
**Operational Tracking Instructors’ Course (Brunei) (OTIC)**

**Course No: 492/002**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Corporal to Major</td>
<td>Students should be fully fit on arrival, as the course is physically demanding.</td>
<td>5½ weeks including a 4 day pre-course</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Students will spend the majority of the course under the jungle canopy. The course is divided into three phases. In the first phase of the course students learn how to identify and follow signs and then qualify as a helicopter abseiler. The next phase is tactical: students learn how to work as a military tracking team, providing interpretations of identified facts to a battalion operations cell. In the final phase, students act on intelligence and use helicopter assets to insert into jungle to close with a target.

To train instructors in the skills of military tracking in order that they can train others to identify, interpret and follow signs in most environments.
International Imagery Analysis Course (IIAC)

Course No: JITG/I/0003

JITG Chicksands

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To teach the principles, procedures and practices of Imagery Analysis, and its application within the defence community. | - **Fundamentals of Imagery Analysis**  
  - Information Technology  
    - Overview and application of Image Enhancement software (ERDAS Imagine) and training in generic soft-copy image processing skills.  
    - Preparing imagery for presentations (Powerpoint)  
    - Principles of Sensors  
    - Comparative advantage and uses of each imagery type  
    - Electro-Optical  
    - Infra-Red  
    - RADAR  
    - Scaling and Measurement  
    - Image-Map Comparison  
    - Basic map reading / symbology and imagery to map relationship  
    - Target Location  
    - Coordinate systems and relationship / transformation between systems  
    - Datum Systems  
    - Geographical Information on Imagery  
    - Imagery Analyst Technique  
    - Teaches the skill of identifying common objects on imagery across the full range of imagery types  
  - Applied Imagery Analysis - Identification and Analysis of:  
    - Industries and Infrastructure  
    - Common Industrial Utilities  
    - Water Treatment  
    - Power Generation and Distribution  
    - Coke, Iron and Steel  
    - Aluminium  
    - Ground Forces  
    - Military Vehicles. Recognition and reporting of military equipment by role  
    - Orders of Battle (ORBAT)  
    - Tables of Organisation and Equipment (TO&E)  
    - Military Infrastructure / Barracks Layout  
    - Using Imagery for Route Reconnaissance (Transportation infrastructure and terrain from a military perspective as a method of assessing the viability of a route).  
    - Naval Forces  
    - Naval Infrastructure and Equipment  
    - Ports and Harbours  
    - Warship and Merchant Vessel Basic Systematic Description  
    - Air Forces  
    - Basic missile components and associated systems and equipment  
    - Radar installation and application  
    - Airfields layout and significance of functional areas  
    - Aircraft description from first principles and recognition                                                                                  |}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR-6 to OF-3. The course is open to experienced (minimum 3 years) Intelligence Analysts and Managers of Analysts from Defence organisations. Whilst applications from the 5 eyes community are welcome, other arrangements exist to meet their needs.</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Selected overseas personnel. Competent PC user with good English language skills</td>
<td>45 Working Days</td>
<td>Progressive testing throughout the course to qualify for their attendance certificate and course report.</td>
<td>Once a year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## International Intelligence Director Course (IIDC)

**Course No: 490/003**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Increase understanding of the UK Intelligence community and processes. Provide a forum to discuss and analyse the conduct and management of intelligence. Forge personal and professional relationships.</td>
<td>The course is based primarily at Chicksands site but includes outings to London. It features lectures by: Chief Defence Intelligence (CDI), Deputy CDI and Director General Intelligence Collection (DGIC). A raft of the UK’s most eminent academics. Senior Officials from: • Police • Security Service (MIS) • Secret Intelligence Service (MI6) • Joint Terrorist Assessment Centre • MOD • The House of Lords • House of Commons. The course is divided into six modules: • The contemporary strategic landscape • The challenges of intelligence sharing • Terrorism and non-state violence • Security Policy • The role of the media • Perspectives of future security.</td>
<td>Maximum 1 student per country. Bids are invited but places only offered following an allocation meeting.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rank Range

- Senior Officers at Colonel/1 star level and above from NATO and non-NATO countries serving or about to serve in senior intelligence appointments

### Entry Standards

- IELTS level 6 minimum

### Duration

- 11 Days including one non-working weekend

### Qualifications gained

- Not examined. Certificate of attendance issued on completion

### Frequency

- 1 course per year
# International Intelligence Analysis Training Course (IIATC)

**Course No:** JITG/I/0003

## Aim of Course

To provide, through a programme of lectures and syndicate exercises, training in a selected range of analytical methods and techniques that are employed within the UK DIAS.

## Outline of Syllabus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR-6 to OF-3</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Nominees must have an underpinning knowledge of analytical techniques and be fluent English speakers</td>
<td>10 Working Days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Remarks

- Nominees must have an underpinning knowledge of analytical techniques and be fluent English speakers.
- The course is open to experienced (minimum 3 years) Intelligence Analysts and Managers of Analysts from Defence organisations. Whilst applications from the 5 eyes community are welcome, other arrangements exist to meet their needs.
# International Imagery Analysis Course (IIAC)

**Course No:** JITG/I/0003

**Aim of Course**
To teach International students the principles, procedures and practices of imagery analysis.

**Outline of Syllabus**
Selected overseas personnel. Competent PC user with good English language skills. IELTS score of 6+ is expected although certification is not essential.

**Remarks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR-6 to OF-3.</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Nominees must have an underpinning knowledge of analytical techniques and be fluent English speakers.</td>
<td>45 Working Days</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 iteration per TY</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MSc In Geospatial Intelligence (RE (Geo) Officers Course)

Course No: JITG/II/0001

### Aim of Course

The principal aim of the course is to prepare staff from all three Services and the Civil Service for a career in the provision of GEOINT so that they can provide advice, analysis and support in its component disciplines of Imagery Analysis, Geospatial Analysis and Geospatial Information.

- Assess how current and developing technologies can meet Defence GEOINT requirements.
- Provide professional advice on the provision of GEOINT support to Defence.
- Apply their knowledge of the technology, systems and techniques needed to collect, manipulate and display imagery and geospatial information.
- Plan, organise and co-ordinate GEOINT support to operations.
- Carry out technical evaluations of data, systems, and processes related to GEOINT activities.
- Demonstrate critical ability, originality of thought and to understand and employ current ideas and criticism and evaluate new ones.
- Provide GEOINT advice to the Defence Community through effective communications.
- Keep up to date with state-of-the-art techniques and methods, both in management and technology, as they relate to GEOINT requirements.
- Demonstrate skills in planning, organising and executing a significant piece of research related to GEOINT requirements using appropriate techniques and principles.
- Develop communication skills by delivering the results in the form of interim reports, a written dissertation, a poster presentation to an invited audience and informal discussions.
- Take a full and active part in Defence GEOINT projects that require in-depth study and analysis.

### Outline of Syllabus

The course covers the following taught modules, plus a research project and written dissertation:

- Geospatial Intelligence Requirements 1
- Geospatial Intelligence Requirements 2
- Fundamentals of Geospatial Science
- Geospatial Intelligence Product Design and Generation
- Spatial Analysis 1
- Remotely Sensed Imagery
- Spatial Analysis 2
- Geospatial Information Systems Management
- Imagery Exploitation
- Geospatial Web Services
- Military Geography
- Geospatial Intelligence Requirements 2

Initially Students will be taught the advanced principles of geospatial analysis as a means of underpinning the use of processes, which identify solutions to real world military problems. The course will also focus on the development of analytical skills in spatial and network modelling to help you to become familiar with key technologies, processes and toolsets. The course will be largely hands on with the use of ESRI’s ArcGIS and various Microsoft Office programs.

The course is designed to meet the advanced education requirements for Royal Engineer (RE) officers entering the RE Geo specialisation. It is also open to students from other parts of the MOD and overseas. There is an additional taught module that is only open to citizens of the United Kingdom, Australia, Canada, New Zealand and United States who hold appropriate security clearances but this does not form part of the assessed MSc course.

### Remarks

Cranfield University will award successful candidates a MSc in Geospatial Intelligence.

### Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant to Lieutenant Colonel</td>
<td>IELTS Level 7 (academic test) Qualified to First Degree (BSc) or equivalent level, ideally in Engineering, Natural Sciences or Geography Qualified to a UK Advanced Level or equivalent in Mathematics</td>
<td>270 Working Days (3 weeks pre-course and 1 year for MSc syllabus.)</td>
<td>Cranfield University will award successful candidates a MSc in Geospatial Intelligence.</td>
<td>One course per year (pre-course commences in August/September)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) User Course

**Course No:** JITG/J/0031

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To provide users with basic knowledge and practical experience of using GIS in a defence capacity. | The course takes the student through the various digital geographic data structures, and explains the military data sets and the appropriate use and limitations of each type. Students will then gain a theoretical and practical understanding of basic GIS functionality using military datasets. Learning Outcomes. On successful completion of this course, students will:  
• Be able to perform basic spatial queries using created datasets from various sources.  
• Have an understanding of the use of GIS in the wider defence community.  
Indicative content:  
• Have an understanding of digital data types, collection processes and copyright limitations.  
• Have a practical awareness of geo processing techniques such as: view-sheds, weighted overlays, least cost path analysis and data re-projection.  
• Import, combine and manage data from various sources.  
• Produce specifically derived data sets from newly created vector data.  
• Create and edit vector data to create a basic map product.  
• Have an understanding of Datums and Projections and their importance within GIS.  
• Have an awareness of visualisation and digital terrain modelling techniques.  
• Students will be able to perform basic spatial analysis to answer basic spatial queries. | Initially students will be taught the principles of geospatial analysis as a means of underpinning the use of processes, which identify solutions to real world military problems. The course will also focus on the key technologies, processes and toolsets. The course will be largely hands on with the use of ESRI’s ArcGIS and various Microsoft Office programs. The course will be delivered using a variety of means, including:  
• Presentations, demonstrations and lectures.  
• Individual activities and tutorials.  
• Practical exercises.  
• Enquiry based learning.  
• Group based activities and discussions.  
• Use of online resources; and the Virtual Learning Environment. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade Military or Civilian personnel with responsibility for operating Geographic Information Systems.</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. ECDL Module 1 - Basic concepts of IT. ECDL Module 2 - Using the computer and managing files. ECDL Module 5 - Database or equivalent experience.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>Approximately 8 courses per year (exact number from year to year).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To provide users, already familiar with the basics of GIS, practical experience of the advanced functionality available.</td>
<td>The course expands upon the theory and practical experience gained on the Defence GIS User Course and will include network analysis, 3D modelling, temporal analysis, site selection, least cost path analysis, and the collection of data using GIS. The course will involve the use of ESRI ArcGIS within a defence environment, with both taught and practical components. All practical exercises will be based on a defence scenario, which will include components applicable for personnel from all armed services, whether land, sea or air based in addition to MOD civilians. Learning Outcomes. On successful completion of this course, students will:</td>
<td>Initially students will be taught the advanced principles of geospatial analysis as a means of underpinning the use of processes, which identify solutions to real world military problems. The course will also focus on the development of analytical skills in spatial and network modelling to help you to become familiar with key technologies, processes and toolsets. The course will be largely hands on with the use of ESRI's ArcGIS and various Microsoft Office programs. The course will be delivered using a variety of means, including:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Be able to perform complex spatial analysis to answer complex geospatial questions.</td>
<td>• Presentations, demonstrations and lectures.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Have an in depth understanding of the use of GIS in the wider defence community.</td>
<td>• Individual activities and tutorials.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Practical exercises.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Indicative content:</td>
<td>• Enquiry based learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Have an understanding of data input options and techniques including the use of GPS data, including the different data types and collection methods.</td>
<td>• Self-directed learning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Have an awareness of Web publishing using GIS Maps and data, from correctly managed geospatial databases.</td>
<td>• Use of online resources, and the Virtual Learning Environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Import, combine and interrogate data from various sources.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Produce specifically derived data sets from newly created raster and vector data from paper sources.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Analysis data within a 2D, 3D and 4D (temporal) environments.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Interrogate and gain a wider understanding of network geospatial data.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Students will be able to perform complex spatial analysis to answer complex spatial queries.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Any rank or grade Military or Civilian personnel with responsibility for operating Geographic Information Systems</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Must have attended the Defence GIS User Course at the Royal School of military Survey or have suitable qualifications or experience.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>Approximately 6 courses per year (exact number vary from year to year)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Advanced Command & Staff Course (ACSC)

**Course No: 706/010**

**DEFAC Shrivenham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant Colonel or equivalent, ideally on or within 2 years of appointment. Major or equivalent selected for promotion.</td>
<td>IELTS level 7. Eight to 10 years of military experience.</td>
<td>12 months (including pre-course training but not language training)</td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase A

**Course No:** 419/086  
**DCLC Shrivenham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To raise the language proficiency of students to IELTS level 6.5 or NATO SLP 4 in Listening, Speaking, Reading and Writing to prepare them for Phase B of the English for the Advanced Command and Staff Course. Ideally on completion of Phase A students should attend Phase B of the EACSC. | The programme is integrated with that of Phase B and is designed to prepare the student to the output standard as follows:  
- Listen to and comprehend spoken English at IELTS level 6.5, in particular to lectures by native-speakers and in discussion groups.  
- Speak English at a minimum of IELTS level 6.5.  
- Read and comprehend English texts to a minimum standard of IELTS 6.5.  
- Write in English to the level of producing a Service paper on a general military topic and take notes of lectures and discussions. Effectively this equates to IELTS level 6.5. |  
To provide a background in the politics, Armed Forces, culture and society of Great Britain to enable the students to integrate socially in the ACSC course and to contribute knowledgeably to the discussion groups. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major to Lieutenant Colonel</td>
<td>Prospective students must already have been selected to attend the ACSC. They must possess a minimum level of English Language proficiency of IELTS level 6 in all 4 skills - listening, speaking, reading and writing. Candidates should be tested in their country prior to acceptance.</td>
<td>6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year starting in May, followed immediately by the English for the Advanced Command Staff Course - Phase B</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Language Courses

## English for the Advanced Command and Staff College (EACSC) - Phase B

**Course No: 419/087**

**DCLC Shrivenham**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To prepare students for attendance on the Advanced Command and Staff Course (ACSC) at the Joint Services Command and Staff College (JSCSC) Shrivenham.</td>
<td>The course covers both general English and specialised military English subject matter. Specialist instruction is also given in the design and delivery of military presentations and briefings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To raise students’ language proficiency in all four language skills to IELTS level 7.0 or NATO SLP 4+ in order to meet the ACSC mandatory English language standard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To provide students with background information on British history and culture and an understanding of both the organisation and role of the British Armed Forces.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major to Lieutenant Colonel</td>
<td>Prospective students must already have been selected to attend the ACSC at the JSCSC. They must possess a minimum level of English Language proficiency of IELTS level 6.5.</td>
<td>6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year, immediately following the English for the Advanced Command and Staff College Course - Phase A and immediately preceding the ACSC at the JSCSC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RMAS) Eng Lang Trg (ELT). Phase A

### Course No: 419/076

**Aim of Course**

To develop the English Language skills (listening, speaking, reading and writing) of overseas cadets to the level required by RMAS. This includes the specific language required for officer training.

To develop an understanding of British culture and society.

To develop a broad knowledge of the British Armed Forces and specifically, the culture of the British Army.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Development of general English language skills including presentation skills
- Introduction of military English
- External learning events at places of military and cultural interest (including RMAS Sovereign’s Parade)
- Physical training, adventure training, sport including swimming
- Drill.

**Remarks**

- Continuous monitoring of progress.
- Final in-house examination equivalent to NATO STANAG 6001 SLP 2 or IELTS level 5.5

**Rank Range**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Officer Cadets</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>English Language ability IELTS level 4.5 to 5.0, with no less than 4.0 in any one language skill. Fitness. Candidates are required to be physically fit. See RMAS Commissioning Course for standards.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>10 weeks</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continuous monitoring of progress. Final in-house examination equivalent to NATO STANAG 6001 SLP 2 or IELTS level 5.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Frequency**

3 per year, starting in February, June and September

**Related Courses**

- Pre-RMAS ELT. Phase B.
## Language Courses

### Pre-Royal Military Academy Sandhurst (RMAS) Preparatory Course. Phase B

**Course No: 419/079**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To develop the English language skills and to introduce the specific language and common military skills required for their Commissioning Course at the Royal Military Academy Sandhurst. | The syllabus covers specialist Army topics which will provide a basic grounding in the study areas cadets will encounter during Officer Training at RMAS. The topics will include:  
- Introduction to the British Army  
- Development of British Army terminology  
- 72-hour field Exercise  
- Physical training and sport  
- Drill, weapon handling and map reading  
- External learning events at British Army units and military museums. | The course officer is a British Army Captain. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Officer Cadets</td>
<td>See RMAS Commissioning Course Entry Requirements. IELTS level 5.5 with no less than 5 in any individual skill. Fitness: Candidates are required to be physically fit. The minimum standard is to be able to run 1.5 miles (2.5 kilometres) in less than 10 minutes 30 seconds.</td>
<td>3 weeks</td>
<td>Final proficiency tests in drill and weapon handling. Continuous monitoring of progress</td>
<td>3 courses per year scheduled prior to the RMAS Commissioning Courses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Language Courses

### Bespoke Military English Courses (Army)

**Course No: 419/124**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Military English Language courses can be designed by the Defence Centre for Language & Culture (DCLC) to meet specific requirements. The syllabus and content of these courses will be tailored to meet the needs of potential customers. All English Language Wing (ELW) courses at DCLC profit from the provision of intensive military English Language Training (MELT), delivered by instructors with military experience. Foreign students train alongside their British counterparts in a military training environment. It should be noted that all our training is tailored to the need of the client; therefore, we are able to offer training of any length for any purpose. | Examples of courses successfully delivered in the recent past include the following:  
- Military English Language Training for Aircrew (Pre Flight Training/Consolidation for experienced aircrew)  
- Preparation for Royal Military Academy Sandhurst Phase A  
- Preparation for Royal Military Academy Sandhurst Phase B  
- English for Advanced Command Staff Course (Shrivenham) Phase A  
- English for Advanced Command Staff Course (Shrivenham) Phase B  
- Pre Technical Language Training (Officers)  
- Technical Language Training (Officers)  
- Technical Language Training (WO/SNCO)  
- English for Military Interpreters  
- SLP 2 Preparation Course  
- SLP 3 Preparation Course  
- SLP 4 Preparation Course  
- Pre Signals Training Course  
- Pre Armour Training Course  
- Pre Infantry Training Course  
- Train The Trainer  
- Remedial English Packages  
- Individual 1:1 Training Packages  
- General English Training  
- General Military English Training  
- Embassy Staff Interpreters’ Course  
- Language for Procurement  
- British Military English Course (BMEC)  
- Advanced Military English Course (AMEC)  
- English for UN Peacekeeping  
- Certificate of English Language Teaching for Adults (CELTA) | Training can be delivered either at DCLC or our Mobile Teams can train students in their native country. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Courses can be designed to meet the needs of any rank, from Officer Cadet to General. The school has recent experience at all levels.</td>
<td>Teaching is not provided for students with no English Language ability whatsoever. The minimum entry standard is usually IELTS level 4.5.</td>
<td>From 1 week onwards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Logistics Courses

## International Logistics Officers’ Course

**Course No: 10w/0066**

### Aim of Course

To train overseas Logistic Officers in those aspects of British Defence Logistic Services, responsibilities and functions that may be considered useful for future non-specialist appointments.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Defence Logistics
- Commercial Logistics
- Logistics Support in the Operational Battlespace
- Specialist Logistics Capabilities
- Logistic planning considerations
- UK cultural awareness

### Remarks

- DCLPA Deepcut

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lt-Lt Col</td>
<td></td>
<td>19 working days</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Joint Logistic Operations Course

**Course No:** 10w/0035  
**DCLPA Deepcut**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To prepare officers for designated appointments in logistic planning and execution of joint and combined operations. | • Introduction to Joint Logistic Operations & Planning  
• Role & Organisation of Head Quarters Staff  
• Conduct overview of logistic input to the estimate  
• Develop the Defence Support Chain Plan  
• PJHQ  
• Initiate Msn Analysis/Framing the Op level prob  
• Maritime Component Logistics  
• Air Component Logistics  
• Land Component Logistics  
• DSCOM  
• Mission and Factor Analysis | |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WO-Lt Col</td>
<td></td>
<td>10 working days</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---
## Logistics Courses

### Joint Service Movements Staff Course

**Course No: 497/004**

**DCLPA Brize Norton**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To introduce Navy, Army and Air Force officers appointed to a Movements or Logistics post in a NATO, EU or UK HQ to UK Joint Service Movements policy, processes and capabilities.</td>
<td>• Lectures from Movements representatives from all levels of NATO Command structure&lt;br&gt;• Visits to major UK Joint Service Movements HQs and units&lt;br&gt;• Syndicate evaluation of two movements problems (strategic and theatre) based on a NATO deployment&lt;br&gt;• Deliver briefing on own nation’s movements system and procedures.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain to Lieutenant Colonel</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Logistics Courses

### Movement Control Officers Course

**Course No: 497/005**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant to Major</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>2 courses per year.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The course comprises formal instruction, visits and a practical phase covering:
- Defence Movements Organisation
- Joint Service Movements Organisation
- Strategic Planning and Operational Movements procedures for:
  - Air Transport
  - Sea Transport
  - Rail Transport
  - Road Transport.

To introduce Army Junior Officers, appointed to a UK HQ Movement Staff or Movement Control Officer post, to UK military movement in support of operations.

Remarks

Outline of Syllabus

DCLPA Brize Norton
**Logistics Courses**

**Officers Petroleum Course**  
*Course No: 10f/CF01*

### Aim of Course

The Officers' Petroleum Course (OPC) provides the Royal Logistics Corps (RLC), Royal Air Force (RAF), Royal Navy (through Cdo Logs Regt) and International Officers with the technical, specialist knowledge required to manage military fuels capability.

### Outline of Syllabus

- **TO1** - Conduct Joint Fuel Specialist staff work planning at Unit & Formation level
- **TO2a** - Manage Deployed Bulk Fuel Installations
- **TO2b** - Manage the construction, maintenance & de-construction of an Enhanced Storage Module (ESM)
- **TO2c** - Manage the construction and maintenance of Bulk Fuel Carrying Vehicle (BFCV) Modules
- **TO2d** - Demonstrate how the construction, maintenance and de-construction of the Light Forces Pumping Systems (LFPS) are directed.
- **TO2e** - Demonstrate how the Quality Control of Fuel & Lubricants (F&L), LPG, Specialist and Industrial Gases is managed, including the application of RAF Quality Assurance, Flight Safety and Airworthiness Policy as applicable to Aviation Fuels.
- **TO03** - Manage the Operating Authority (OA) of a Deployed Permanent Installation (DPI).
- **TO04** - Manage Static Fuel Installations.
- **TO05** - Conduct Petroleum Inspectorate duties.

### Remarks

This residential course is delivered Jan - Aug each year, in both classroom outdoor environments, with a mixture of theory and practical elements. The course is initially conducted at the Defence Academy at Shrivenham, for the bulk of the academic theory, with the practical elements currently delivered at MOD West Moors.

### Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| OF1 - OF2 (Lt / Fg off - Capt / Fit Lt) | Medically Fully Deployable Be Lt / Fg Off with a recommendation of promotion or above  
Have minimum 2 years return of service  
Have completed a tour of duty as a Troop / Flight Commander  
Be qualified for promotion to Captain (i.e. completed JOTAC, MK1 & JOLP) or national equivalent. Ideally attended & completed Junior Captains Course | 31 Weeks (Jan - Aug) | RLC-PET_OFFR-ARMY | 1 course per year |
## Consignment Tracking Unit Operator (CTUO)

**Course No: 1902**

### Aim of Course
To prepare Logistics (Supply) to operate consignment tracking hardware.

### Outline of Syllabus
1. Logon and Logoff the VITAL and CATT UK Systems
2. Navigate the screen layout and associated functions
3. Carry out Create Item Issue procedures
4. Carry out Package procedures
5. Carry out Deployment Package procedures
6. Carry out Master Package Configuration procedures
7. Produce RFID Tag information
8. Write RFID Tags for specific situations
9. Carry out Despatch procedures
10. Carry out Bid For Movement procedures
11. Carry out Record Package Arrival procedures
12. Remove the RFID Tag from a package
13. Investigate and action Packages Discrepancies
14. Record Issue Receipt by Direct Despatch of packages
15. Use the Laser Data Terminal transfer gun
16. Rectify a Permanent Package that is incorrectly listed In Transit to another VITALNode
17. Carry out basic maintenance and diagnostics
18. Answer general queries from internal and external sources on the current status and location of any type of package
19. Resolve Outstanding Package Discrepancies
20. Carry out Display Screen Equipment procedures
21. Read and comply with Part 2 of the VITALSyOps and Electronically sign as having done so
22. Send and receive electronic mail
23. Carry out Temporary Location procedures

### Remarks
This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements.

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
--- | --- | --- | --- | ---
SAC-WO | Logistics Staff | 5 working days |  | 19 per year
**Logistics Courses**

**Dangerous Goods by Air (CAA Accredited)**

*Course No: 1904*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The Dangerous Goods by Air (CAA Accredited) course is a Civil Aviation Authority (CAA) certified course. It follows the successful completion of the Dangerous Goods by Surface course (CN 1903). It is designed to give students the skills, knowledge and attitudes required in the preparation of dangerous goods for transportation by military and civil air. The aim of the course is to provide students with an in-depth knowledge of the dangerous goods regulations, thereby enabling them to competently carry out the responsibilities of shippers for the transportation of articles and substances of UN Classes 2 - 6, 8 and 9 by air. | 1 - Describe the safety precautions applicable to handling dangerous goods  
2 - Describe the action to be taken in the event of an accident involving Dangerous Goods  
3 - Outline the organisational responsibilities for the Modal Recommendations for the Transportation of Dangerous Goods  
4 - Describe the classification system applicable to all Dangerous goods in transit  
5 - Identify UN Standard packaging materials and correctly interpret the meaning of each element of a UN packaging code  
6 - State the legal necessity of using UN packaging of the correct standard and the legal and financial implications of using the incorrect packaging when consigning dangerous goods  
7 - State the security requirements for dangerous goods in transit  
8 - Outline the agencies involved in the movements of dangerous goods by civilian and military air transportation and describe how the agencies interface to determine policy  
9 - Identify and interpret the regulations for the movement of dangerous goods by civilian and military air  
10 - Prepare and check for completeness, documentation raised for a consignment of dangerous goods by air  
11 - Obtain a satisfactory pass in a theory final exam (CAA accredited)  
12 - Participate in debrief of CAA final exam  
13 - Consolidation of TO 9 | This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAC-WO</td>
<td>Q-Sup-DG(Surface)</td>
<td>5 working days.</td>
<td>Q-Sup-DG(CAA) - Dangerous Goods by Air (CAA)</td>
<td>2 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Logistics Courses

**Dangerous Goods by Surface**  
*Course No: 1903*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To prepare Logistics (Suppliers) to dispatch Dangerous Goods by surface. | 1 - Describe the safety precautions applicable to handling dangerous goods  
2 - Describe the action to be taken in the event of an accident involving Dangerous Goods  
3 - Outline the organisational responsibilities for the Modal Recommendations for the Transportation of Dangerous Goods  
4 - Describe the classification system applicable to all Dangerous goods in transit  
5 - Identify UN Standard packaging materials and correctly interpret the meaning of each element of a UN packaging code  
6 - State the legal necessity of using UN packaging of the correct standard and the legal and financial implications of using the incorrect packaging when consigning dangerous goods  
7 - Identify and interpret the relevant service regulations from the current edition of the JSP800  
8 - State the security requirements for dangerous goods in transit  
9 - Outline the agencies involved in determining policy for international surface movements by road and rail  
10 - Identify and interpret the regulations governing the international and national movement of dangerous goods by road and rail  
11 - Prepare and check for completeness, documentation for a consignment of dangerous goods for international and national movement by road  
12 - Outline the agencies involved in determining policy for international surface movements by sea  
13 - Identify and interpret the regulations governing the international and national movement of dangerous goods by sea | This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SAC-WO</td>
<td>2 Years in Trade</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>Q-Sup-DG(Surface)</td>
<td>5 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Defence Logistic Management Course (DLMC)

**Course No:** RAF Cranwell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The aim of the DLMC is to provide an awareness level of understanding of the strategic and operational overview of the end to end Logistic Support Network and its potential impact on operational capability and thus enabling individuals to explain the underpinning workings and challenges and contribute to effectiveness of logistics support to operations. | DE&S Executive Address  
MOD Finance  
MOD Logistics Policy  
MOD Capability Area (ELS)  
Joint Support Chain Transformation Programme  
Permanent Joint Headquarters  
Contractorised Support to Operations  
Front Line Command - Customer Support Team  
Defence Support Chain Operations and Movements  
Joint Support Chain Performance Management  
Inventory Optimisation  
Disposal Services Agency  
 Defence Storage and Distribution Agency  
Through Life Support  
Project Team Perspective  
Partnering with Industry | The course has been developed to provide an insight for military and civilian personnel who are about to take up a Defence logistics post, primarily but not exclusively within DE&S. It is strongly recommended that candidates undertake the ‘Key Logistics Messages’ training packages 1 and 2 through the Defence Academy website prior to attendance on the DLMC. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Non MOD Civilians of an equivalent rank to Civil Servants Band D to C1, officers of the RN, Army, RM and RAF of SO1 to SO3 rank. Applications from WO1/WO2 equivalent grades are invited and will be considered on a case by case basis. | IELTS Level 5  
The IELTS must have been sat within 3 years of the intended course date. | 3.5 days | | Up to 3 per year |
**Defence Logistics Staff Course (DLSC)**

**Course No:** RAF Cranwell

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A first class educational opportunity that suits the needs of both the Service and the individual, the DLSC has been developed from the highly successful Air Logistics Staff Course, recognised across Defence as a rigorous academic programme. The DLSC is an educative Modular Masters level programme which is sponsored by the Director of the Joint Support Chain and operated in conjunction with the University of Lincoln. The aims of the course are:</td>
<td>Logistics Strategic Management &amp; Doctrine</td>
<td>A minimum of two cohorts of 25 students will be selected each year. Each Cohort attends 8 one-week residential modules based at RAF Cranwell separated by around 8 weeks, with the entire Cohort being typically conducted over an 18-20 month period. After each residential week students are required to submit an academic paper of 5000 words which is assessed according to the UoL Masters level assessment criteria. Students who successfully pass all academic papers are awarded a Post Graduate Diploma (PgDip) in Logistics Management with a further opportunity for them to undertake a final dissertation for the award of an MSc in Logistics Management. The final degree has the professional accreditation of both the Chartered Institute of Logistics and Transport (CILT) the Chartered Institute of Purchasing and Supply (CIPS) and will shortly be accredited by the Chartered Management Institute (CMI).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To contribute more widely and effectively in Defence Logistics appointments</td>
<td>Management of Project &amp; Contract Risk</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To be better prepared to compete for and win at competition, posts at OF5 level and above</td>
<td>Modern Military innovation, problem solving and Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To improve understanding/appreciation of the Support Chain and of commercial best practice</td>
<td>Procurement and Management within Defence Supply Chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Management and Leadership</td>
<td>Logistics Management and Leadership</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effective and efficient projection of military logistics capability</td>
<td>Managing Quality and Enhancements within existing Supply Chains</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future logistics challenges and application of Research Methodologies</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Rank Range**
Non MOD civilians of an equivalent rank to recently promoted SO2 or equivalent from the RN, Army, RM, RAF. Applications from equivalent Officers of SO1 and senior SO3 rank will be considered on a case by case basis. Completion of prior higher education courses is not always a pre-requisite to selection.

**Entry Standards**
IELTS level 5.5

**Duration**
20 months

**Qualifications gained**

**Frequency**
3 cohorts of 25 students per year
## Explosives Authorised Representatives

### Course No: 1308

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To prepare Logistics (Supply) to transport Class 1 products. | Comply with all aspects of the Health and Safety at Work Act 1974 relevant to their area of employment.  
- State the responsibilities placed upon individuals to act in accordance with MOD Environmental Policy  
Identify and interpret the regulations associated with the Authorised Representative tasks  
Recognise and check for correct completion of the documentation associated with explosives consignment  
Explain the load checks that must be carried out on a consignment of explosives  
Explain the procedures that must be carried out on a vehicle prior to, and after, loading explosives  
Explain the procedures for drivers and attendants of vehicles carrying explosives  
Explain the requirements for explosive consignments in freight containers and rail wagons  
Accident, Incident, Non Compliance Reporting and Compliance Monitoring | This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements |

### Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency |
|---------------|----------------|-----------|-----------------------|-----------|
| Cpl-WO        | Q-Sup DG (surface)  
Q-Sup DG (Air) | 4 working days | Q-X-AR                | 5 per year |
# Managers and Supervisors Fuels & Lubricants (F&L)

**Course No: 10H/1891**

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Health & Safety in an F&L environment
- Fire Regulations
- Environmental Protection Policy
- Airworthiness Policy
- Dangerous Substances & Explosive Atmospheres Regulations (DSEAR)
- Contamination Reporting
- Unit Spillage Response Planning (USRP)
- Care Of Substances Hazardous to Health (COSH)
- Operating Authority & Receiving Officer
- Roles & Responsibilities of the F&L Manager
- F&L Training
- Personal Protective Equipment (PPE)
- Siting Boards
- Installation Documentation
- F&L Inspections & Reports
- Design of all F&L infrastructure
- Quality Testing Processes & Standards
- Operating and Accounting procedures
- Compressed Gasses (CG)
- Waste Management
- F&L IT Systems

**Remarks**

This residential course is delivered three times per year and builds upon the training and experience gained from completing the Fuel & Lubricants Section Operator Course. The course runs for a week and is focused at the managerial aspects of the Fuel & Lubricants (F&L) specialisation, looking specifically at Aviation but also Ground fuels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR-5 to OF-2 &amp; Civilian Equivalent (Sgt - Flt Lt)</td>
<td>Must have completed Fuels &amp; Lubricants Section Operator Course (10h/1900) Be a minimum of A/Sgt</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td>Q-SUP-F(MGR)-RAF</td>
<td>3 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DCLPA Halton**
**Officers’ Movements Training (OMT)**

*Course No: STC 2500*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To provide Logistics Officers with the necessary skill and knowledge applicable to the duties of the Movement Officer, in order to enable the Officer to manage the movement of passengers, cargo and mail by air and service means under normal peacetime conditions, contingency operations, during transition to war and war.</td>
<td>This Pre-Employment Training Course provides the student with the technical skill and knowledge required to fill any Junior Movements Officer post. The course introduces the student to the Movements organisations and the Movements trade structure. It goes on to comprehensively study regulations and procedures governing the movement of passengers and cargo in all types of Service and civilian transport aircraft and also by Service means of transport. There is a large practical element to the course, providing students with the skills required to restrain, plan and build aircraft loads, utilising the aircraft mock-ups within the practical training area. Throughout the course the students are taught to perform key skills required by a Movements Officer, which includes checking completed aircraft loads and scrutinising aircraft paperwork, including aircraft trimsheets, in order to ensure the load is safe for flight. The course content is delivered via classroom lectures, guided study, practical demonstrations, a series of visits, and practical exercises both in the UK and Cyprus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Lt - OF-1</td>
<td>Foreign and Commonwealth students who have been nominated by the FCO. International students are to have an International English Learning Testing System (IELTS) score of 5.5 and CP3 vision.</td>
<td>17 weeks for International Students</td>
<td>Certificate of completion</td>
<td>2 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Supply Basic Training Course

**Course No:** 1825

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To prepare Logistics (Supply) students for their first assignment.</td>
<td>1 - Safety Health Environmental and Fire</td>
<td>This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2 - Communications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 - RAF Supply Organisation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4 - Quality Assurance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5 - Supply Publications</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6 - Public Equipment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7 - Material Condition s</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 - Storage Locations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>9 - Introduction to Inventories</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>10 - RAF Form 7109</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 - Introduction to MJD I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12 - Introduction to Personal Computers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13 - Consignment Tracking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>14 - The Suppliers responsibilities in a SHG</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 - The Suppliers responsibilities in a Forward Store</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 - The Suppliers responsibilities in Receipt and Despatch</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>17 - The Suppliers responsibilities in Forward Delivery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>18 - The Suppliers responsibilities on a Deployable Group</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>19 - The Suppliers responsibilities in a Forward Stores</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>20 - The Suppliers responsibilities in an Electronic Stores</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>21 - The Suppliers responsibilities in a Supply Control and Accounting Flight</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>22 - Understand Leadership as part of Force Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>23 - Understand Air Power as part of Force Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 - Understand Ethos as part of Force Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>25 - Understand Deployed Operations as part of Force Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AC/SAC</td>
<td>IELTS Level 5.5</td>
<td>13 weeks and 2 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>As required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Logistics Courses

### Supply Specialist Ocean Terminal Course

**Course No: 10H1894**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR-5 to OF-2 &amp; Civilian Equivalent (Sgt - Flt Lt)</td>
<td>Must have completed Fuels &amp; Lubricants Section Operator Course (10H/1900) Must have completed Fuels &amp; Lubricants Section Manager &amp; Supervisor Course (10H/1891) Be a minimum of A/Sgt</td>
<td>2 Weeks (including travel to RAF Akrotiri)</td>
<td>Q-SUP-F(OT)-RAF</td>
<td>4 per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Aim of Course

To train selected Officers of the Logistics Branch, Warrant officers and Senior NCOs of Trade Group 18 and selected RLC Pet Op SNCOs to fill specific posts directly associated with the operation of Petroleum Supply Depot Ocean Terminals.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Ocean Terminal Management
- Ocean Tanker Design
- Actions prior, during and after an Ocean Tanker Discharge
- Accounting and Documentation
- Practical Operations
- Marine Pollution

### Remarks

This residential course is delivered four times per year to a maximum 4 students who are directly employed in Ocean Tanker Receipts at air force Permanent Joint Operating Bases (PJOB) around the world. The course runs for 2 weeks and covers the theory and practical elements of receipting fuel from ocean going tanker including the quality surveillance measures involved.
### Military Pre-Hospital Emergency Care Course

**Course No:**

#### Outline of Syllabus

The MPHEC course will utilise an online pre-course learning package coupled with a series of presentations and scenarios designed to develop and test the candidates in relation to situations they may find themselves in when undertaking a role within the PHEC environment specifically:

- a. An introduction to pre-hospital safety and how to attain confidence in the PHEC environment.
- b. An introduction to, and a basic understanding of, conditions commonly encountered in PHEC.
- c. Equip candidates with the knowledge to deal with the most challenging or time-critical PHEC situations if they are unlucky enough to encounter them early in their PHEC career such as cardiac arrests in special circumstances or capacity issues.
- d. Gain an understanding of the principles of career and personnel development in PHEC. This will include translation of in-hospital knowledge to the PHEC environment, an awareness of relevant PHEC CPD and how to identify and address shortfalls in their PHEC knowledge.
- e. Ensure candidates’ attitudes, behaviour and baseline knowledge are sufficient to protect the reputation of the DMS as they embark on UK or overseas PHEC experience.

Assessment of competence consist of a moulage station and a written examination containing 25 questions with five true/false answers per question stem.

### Remarks

The course prepares, and is seen by prospective employers as preparing, doctors, nurses and paramedics for initial work in the UK or overseas PHEC environment appropriate to their qualifications and experience. The actual requirements to be met by the end of the course will be somewhat different for the three professions undertaking the course.

#### Rank Range Entry Standards Duration Qualifications gained Frequency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All Ranks based on Professional Qualifications</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System IELTS 6</td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Military Major Incident Medical Management and Support (MilMIMMS)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 upwards who meet requirements listed above.</td>
<td>2.5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**: The aim of the course is to provide the functional knowledge and understanding of major incident management at Bronze and Silver levels of command and enable personnel to contribute to site specific major incident plans as well as undertake key roles within a major incident.

**Outline of Syllabus**: The course comprises of interactive lectures, table top and practical exercises. Personnel are introduced to the major incident algorithm and given numerous challenges and opportunities to apply knowledge and understanding to a range of major incident based scenarios. Competency of understanding is assessed at the end of the course through mostly scenario based assessments where the student is required to demonstrate effective use of the principles of major incident management.

**Remarks**: The MilMIMMS End State is to deliver personnel with appropriate levels of knowledge and understanding to fulfil the role of major incident planning and response.
**Battlefield Advanced Trauma Life Support (BATLS)**

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Enlisted OR 2 - 9, Commissioned Of 1 - 5</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 6</td>
<td>2.5 days (Part A - 0.5 days Online Distance Learning (ODL), Part B - 2 day Residential)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Ethical Issues For Medical Personnel Captured Persons (CPERS)- Awareness

Course No: 1013

Aim of Course
These courses provide awareness of ethical issues surrounding the detention and medical treatment of CPERS. They highlight the roles and responsibilities of all medical personnel as detailed in Joint Doctrine Publication (JDP) 1-10.

Outline of Syllabus
Designed to assist the individual in conceptualising related doctrine and ethics, with the responsibilities and practicalities of CPERS detention and treatment.

Remarks
- The CPERS Awareness provides benchmarks for ethical and detention treatment considerations in accordance with JDP 1-10. There is an online exam to quantify Awareness/Level 1 understanding.
- The Ethical Issues for Medical Personnel (CPERS) Awareness online course is mandatory pre-deployment, and/or Very High Readiness (VHR), training for all DMS personnel. It is available via Defence Learning Environment (DLE). Recorded on JPA, it also serves as prerequisite learning for the Ethical Issues for Medical Personnel (CPERS) Practitioner course.

Defence Medical Services personnel will be prepared for their responsibilities surrounding CPERS in accordance with Defence doctrine and international policy.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All ranks/ members of Defence Medical Services.</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 7-9</td>
<td>Online 1 hour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Ethical Issues For Medical Personnel Captured Persons (CPERS)- Practitioner

**Course No: 1014**

**Aim of Course**

These courses provide awareness of ethical issues surrounding the detention and medical treatment of CPERS. They highlight the roles and responsibilities of all medical personnel as detailed in Joint Doctrine Publication (JDP) 1-10.

- The CPERS Practitioner builds upon the CPERS Awareness considerations with subject matter expert led sessions in: medico-legal, Military Provost, single Service considerations for detention facilities, Military Ethics and values, Medical Ethics. Furthermore, introducing policy from the United Nations, British Medical Association, International Red Cross and World Medical Association declarations. To quantify Practitioner/ Level 2 understanding there is a 30-minute multiple choice theory exam requiring a 75% pass mark.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Designed to assist the individual in conceptualising related doctrine and ethics, with the responsibilities and practicalities of CPERS detention and treatment.
- The CPERS Practitioner builds upon the CPERS Awareness considerations with subject matter expert led sessions in: medico-legal, Military Provost, single Service considerations for detention facilities, Military Ethics and values, Medical Ethics. Furthermore, introducing policy from the United Nations, British Medical Association, International Red Cross and World Medical Association declarations. To quantify Practitioner/ Level 2 understanding there is a 30-minute multiple choice theory exam requiring a 75% pass mark.

**Remarks**

- Defence Medical Services personnel will be prepared for their responsibilities surrounding CPERS in accordance with Defence doctrine and international policy.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>DMS Personnel in possession of Awareness competency, including Medical Officers, Nurses and senior ranking Medics. Junior ranking Medics are taken only by exception where operational job role dictates.</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 6-9</td>
<td>2 days.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Post Graduate Medical Officer Phase 2b (PGMO)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Capt</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 6</td>
<td>14 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Joint Medical Operations Planning Course (JMOP)  
Course No:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The aim of this training is to enable DMS Officers to undertake effective Medical Staff Officer duties in a Joint or single Service operational headquarters</td>
<td>The course comprises of two, 1 week elements: WEEK 1: The first week mixes an overview of the theory and basis of Operational Planning with insight briefs from Defence, civilian and NATO subject matter experts ranging from environmental health, CBRN and the UK Surgeon General. The key analytical skills and tools common to the various Operational Level Planning Processes in AJP-5 are also introduced here, with students practicing then based around a common scenario. WEEK 2: The second week is based around practical group planning exercises, which use modern kinetic conflict and humanitarian intervention scenarios to develop student confidence with the planning process and tools. This is supported by 'real word experience' talks from UK and NATO Operational Level Medical Planning Practitioners. The course final exercise concludes with a summative assessment decision brief, presenting key medical factor analysis to a senior member of the department staff, acting in the role of Commander.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tri Service OF2-3. &quot;The course is primarily designed to prepare DMS Officers from the Command and Staff Cadre, as senior OF2s. Selected Medical Technical Officers and POO either OF2 or junior OF3s may be nominated to attend.&quot;</td>
<td>International English Language Testing System (IELTS) 6</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>Twice a year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

DMS Whittington
# Medical Humanitarian and Stabilisation Operations (MHSO)

**Course No:**

The course introduces students to the necessary international, civilian, NATO and UK military theories and practical advice required to assist in the planning of a Humanitarian Assistance Operations, Stabilisation Operations, Reconstruction and Development Operations, Healthcare CIMIC activities and Defence Healthcare Engagement Activities (including Security Sector Reform and Disarmament, Demobilisation and Reintegration). Topics include and not limited to:

- Policy and Doctrine – HMG Department for International Development, Foreign and Commonwealth Office and Defence Policy, AIP 4.10(b), JSP 352 and Sharing the Space.
- IOs, GOs and NGOs – The International Response System, Inter-Agency Standing Committee, the Cluster System, Wilsonian vs Dunantist NGOs, Funding, Regulation of International Emergency Medical Teams, ICRC vs IFRC.
- Health Systems – Stewardship, WHO 6 Building Blocks, AMGOTs, Health Development Roadmap, the Determinants of Health, the symbiotic relationship between civilian and military healthcare, unintended consequences.

The course is targeted at the SO2 level and is rank ranged OR8 to OF4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>IELTS 6. Overseas students should be schooled in their own country's policy and approach to these operations, as the course content is delivered in accordance with HMG’s policy.</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td></td>
<td>Bi-Annually</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Music Courses

## Musician

**Course No: 433/002**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private and above.</td>
<td>IELTS level 4. Must be a member of an established-Armed Service, Police or Prison Service Band.</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>Certificate of attendance of the Foundation Course. Students may be entered for the Associated Board of the Royal Schools of Music examinations in performance and theory.</td>
<td>1 course per year, commencing in September. Provision can be made for a start in January.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**
- The course is unaccompanied.
- Musicians could gain a recommendation to return to the RMSM for the Music Direction Course.

### Outline of Syllabus

- **Instrumental skills**
- **Aural perception**
- **Musical Theory techniques including basic history of music**
- **Parade drill and deportment.**

### Aim of Course

To equip musicians of established bands with the necessary skills and knowledge to enable them to perform as instrumentalists within their Band.
# Piper Class 1

**Course No: 456/029**

**ASBM&HD Edinburgh**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To improve instructional ability and playing standard of pipers to Class 1 standard and to train pipers in Piobaireachd in order to assess potential for Pipe Majors’ course. | • Practical playing  
• Theory  
• Foot drill  
• Instructional techniques. | 12 students per course. International students accepted if there are places available. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officer.</td>
<td>7 weeks</td>
<td>Piper Class 1 Certificate. PDQB Level 4 Certificate. DIT Certificate.</td>
<td>1 course per year - Jun</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Piper Class 2

**Course No: 456/027**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train pipers to Class 2 standard. | • Practical playing  
• Theory  
• Foot drill. | 12 students per course. International students accepted if there are places available. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officer.</td>
<td>10 weeks</td>
<td>Piper Class 2 Certificate. PDQB Level 3 Certificate.</td>
<td>2 courses per year - Jul and Jan</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Piper Class 3

*Course No: 456/017*  

**ASBM&HD Edinburgh**

## Aim of Course

To teach potential pipers to Class 3 standard in order to take their place within a unit Pipes and Drums.

## Outline of Syllabus

- Practical playing
- Theory
- Foot drill
- Highland Dancing.

## Remarks

- 19 students per course.
- International students accepted if there are places available.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officer.</td>
<td>22 weeks</td>
<td>Piper Class 3 Certificate. PDQB Level 1 and 2 Certificate.</td>
<td>2 courses per year - Apr and Oct</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Pipe Majors’ Course

**Course No:** 456/023

**ASBM&HD Edinburgh**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To train potential Pipe Majors to the standard of the Pipe Majors’ Certificate. | • Practical playing  
• Theory, History, Music Writing  
• Foot drill. | 8 students per course. International students accepted if there are places available. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Substantive Lance Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officer and by DABM.</td>
<td>28 weeks</td>
<td>Pipe Majors’ Certificate. PDQB Level 6 Certificate.</td>
<td>1 course per year - Sept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Drummer (Highland) Class 3

**Course No: 456/021**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Private to Corporal</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officer.</td>
<td>22 weeks</td>
<td>Drummer Class 3 Certificate PDQB Level 1 Certificate</td>
<td>2 courses per year - Apr and Oct</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Aim of Course
To teach potential drummers to Class 3 standard in order to take their place within a unit Pipes and Drums.

### Outline of Syllabus
- Practical playing
- Theory
- Foot drill
- Highland Dancing.

### Remarks
12 students per course. International students accepted if there are places available.
## Music Courses

### Class 1 Drummer/Drum Major

**Course No: 456/022**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Substantive Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. Recommended by Commanding Officers for the post of Drum Major.</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td>Drum Major (Highland) Drill Certificate</td>
<td>1 course per year - Sept</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

- To improve the instructional ability of Class 2 Intermediate drummers to the standard of the RSPBA Instructors Certificate.
- To instruct Class 2 drummers in the skills required to gain the Army Class 1 Certificate and improve ability to the standard of the RSPBA Advanced Certificate.
- To instruct potential Drum Majors (Highland) in Mace Drill, Drill and formations required for Pipe Bands within the Army to Drum Major Certificate Standard.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Dress, turnout and bearing
- Foot and Mace drill
- Pipe Band formations
- The theory and writing of drum scores
- Music writing software (advanced)
- The instruction of the bugle, bass, side and tenor drum
- The management of a pipe band
- The instruction of drumming to beginners
- History of highland drumming in the army

**Remarks**

- 8 students per course.

---

ASBM&HD Edinburgh
## Defence Photographer Course

**Course No: 521/003**

### Aim of Course

The course is Phase 2 training designed to train Personnel in the trade of Defence Photographer.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Principles of photography
- Operation of IT equipment
- Operation of digital camera equipment
- Operation of video equipment
- Operation of lighting equipment
- Maintenance of equipment
- Digital workflow procedures
- Colour management
- Image enhancement
- Image output
- Minilab printing
- Quality control
- Engineering support photography
- Technical photography
- Operational support photography
- Corporate communications photography
- Video production.

### Remarks

The course is Phase 2 training designed to train Personnel in the trade of Defence Photographer.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Minimum Rank)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RN - Leading Hand.</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. In all cases personnel should demonstrate an interest and aptitude for photography.</td>
<td>28 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Army - Lance Corporal.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAF - Aircraftsman.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD Civilian - D Grade.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Defence Media Operations Photographer Course

**Course No: 521/001**

JITG Cosford

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The course is designed to train personnel in the knowledge and skills to undertake Media news duties as part of a Media News Team or Combat Camera Team. | • Principles of Photojournalism  
• Media news outlets  
• Image requirements for various news outlets  
• Caption/story writing  
• Use of satellite image transmission software and equipment  
• Photographing controlled and uncontrolled action. |         |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All ranks</td>
<td>Applicants from the three Services must have successfully completed the Defence Photographer Course. MOD civilians and Reservists must have completed a recognised professional photographic course.</td>
<td>2 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Non-Specialist Basic Camera Handling Course (Army)

Course No: 521/007

Photography Courses

JITG Cosford

Aim of Course

The aim of this course is to train Army personnel who may have to use a digital camera to meet an operational requirement. This bespoke training course is tailored to the individual requirements of the customer. By using modular training objectives and instructional specifications a course can be put together with the minimum of time and documentation.

Outline of Syllabus

Dependant on the Requirement
• Basic principles of photography
• Operation of IT equipment
• Operation of digital camera equipment
• Operation of lighting equipment
• Operation of image intensifier equipment for low light photography
• Maintenance of equipment
• Digital workflow procedures
• Colour management
• Image enhancement
• Image output
• Practical photographic techniques to meet the operational requirement
• Operation of camcorder video equipment
• Basic video editing.

Remarks

The aim of this course is to train Army personnel who may have to use a digital camera to meet an operational requirement. This bespoke training course is tailored to the individual requirements of the customer. By using modular training objectives and instructional specifications a course can be put together with the minimum of time and documentation.

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
---|---|---|---|---
All ranks | Entry to the course will be to meet an operational requirement. A pre-course knowledge of photography is not expected, however a working knowledge of IT equipment and its operation is desirable. | As required to meet the operational requirement | | One-off targeted training course
## Physical Training Courses

### All Arms Physical Training Instructor (AAPTI)

**Course No: 432/036**

**ITG Aldershot**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| To teach students how to deliver safe, effective and progressive physical training (PT) to all soldiers. Operate independently, to a formalised Unit PT programme when directed. | • Deliver physical training.  
  • Deliver recreational training.  
  • Conduct physical testing.  
  • Design a PT programme.  
  • Implement health and safety policy in relation to PT and recreational training.  
  • Conduct job related administrative tasks.  
  • Describe human anatomical components and exercise physiology. | |

### Qualifications gained

- Delivered physical training.
- Delivered recreational training.
- Conducted physical testing.
- Designed a PT programme.
- Implemented health and safety policy in relation to PT and recreational training.
- Conducted job-related administrative tasks.
- Described human anatomical components and exercise physiology.

### Rank Range

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lance Corporal to Sergeant | IELTS level 5.  
  A high standard of physical fitness, able to achieve the following standards:  
  • Run 1.5 miles in 9½ minutes.  
  • 60 sit ups in 2 minutes.  
  • 50 press ups. In 2 minutes.  
  • Complete the (Annual Fitness Test) AFT 8 Miles in 2hrs carrying 25kgs.  
  • Ability to swim 100 metres, and tread water for 2 minutes then climb out of the pool unaided.  
  • Must have a full medical and dental examination and be certified, "Fit to attend course". | 8 weeks  |  | 7 courses per year |
Royal Army Physical Training Corps Instructor Course

Course No: 432/002

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance Corporal to</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. All Arms Physical Training Instructor Course. High standard of</td>
<td>30 weeks</td>
<td>Adventurous Training Qualifications in Kayaking, MLT, Rock Climbing and mountain biking.</td>
<td>4 courses per year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sergeant</td>
<td>physical fitness. Run 1.5 miles in 9½ minutes. Sit ups 60 in 2 minutes. Press</td>
<td></td>
<td>Coaching Awards. Officialing/Refereeing Qualifications. Foundation Degree in Sports</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>up 50 in 2 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Coaching (course fees separate). Swimming Teacher Award.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Aim of Course

Develop Senior Non Commissioned Officer qualities and personnel management skills.
Further develop physical development related knowledge and skills taught during the All Arms Physical Training Instructor course.
Coach and mentor students in the management and supervision of all physical development training.
Mentor students in the management and supervision of physical and recreational training facilities.

Outline of Syllabus

- Advise on physical development matters.
- Describe human anatomical components and exercise physiology.
- Conduct and demonstrate practical physical training.
- Conduct and demonstrate practical recreational training.
- Conduct and demonstrate practical adventurous training.
- Manage physical development training.
- Manage resource management policies.
- Manage personnel.

Remarks

Must have attended the All Arms Physical Training Instructor within the last five years.
Physical Training Instructor Re-qualification  
Course No: 432/041

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To re-qualify all eligible personnel for a further 5 years to deliver: 1. Physical training for all military personnel. 2. Obstacle course training for civilian personnel.</td>
<td>Updates and verifies skills and qualifications from All Arms Physical Training Instructor courses; • Remind and revise the delivery of physical training. • Remind and revise the implementation of health and safety policy in relation to physical and recreational training. • Remind and revise the conduct of physical testing.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 5. Successful completion of the All Arms Physical Training Instructor Course. High standard of physical fitness, able to achieve the following standards: • As per Entry standards for All Arms Physical Training Instructor Course.</td>
<td>1 week</td>
<td></td>
<td>4 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Police Training Courses

### Defence Guarding Specialist

**Course No: 13c/1078**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pte (OR2)</td>
<td>Trained soldiers (regular or reserve), having served in the Army, Navy, or Air Force, for at least 3 years of consecutive service and discharged within the last 6 years (or 10 if substantive Corporal or above)</td>
<td>5 Days</td>
<td>Level 3 in Defence Guarding and Security.</td>
<td>5 courses per year. 1 course every 3 months on average.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

The aim of this course is to train personnel to undertake security duties at defence establishments. Upon completion of this course personnel will be qualified to conduct: armed guarding duties, vehicle searches, control room procedures and incident management.

**Outline of Syllabus**

- Judgemental training in order to understand the rules of engagement
- Comprehension and application of the powers of arrest in accordance with the local law
- Vehicle, building, area and person search techniques
- Control room procedures
- Conduct of armed / unarmed patrol techniques
- Reaction to immediate response drills including Improvised Explosive Devices, Armed Intruder and Suspicious Vehicles
- Use of effective voice procedure including sending an initial and full contact report.

**Remarks**

This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements. The course takes advantage of the Dismounted Close Combat Trainer to carry out judgemental training and Hand Held Metal Detectors for personnel search.
## Police Training Courses

### Site Commanders

**Course No: 13c/1084**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SGT (OR6) - SSGT (OR7)</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 course per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The aim of this course is to train selected personnel to undertake the role of a Military Provost Guard Service Defence Platoon Commander at defence establishments. Upon completion of this course personnel will be qualified to carry out the administration, welfare and training of their assigned platoon.

The course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements. In addition to trainer-led delivery, the course takes advantage of suitably qualified and experienced guest speakers to deliver content and utilises syndicate work to maximum effect.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Understanding the application of the principles of welfare whilst acting in accordance with the Tri-Service compassionate and casualty procedure
- Comprehension and management of military provost guard service security duties
- Application of effective risk management
- Upholding and instilling values and standards
- Instillation, application and maintenance of discipline
- Development of subordinates through coaching and mentoring
- Career management for Military Provost Guard Service Personnel.

### Remarks

This residential course is delivered in the classroom with a mixture of theory and practical elements. In addition to trainer-led delivery, the course takes advantage of suitably qualified and experienced guest speakers to deliver content and utilises syndicate work to maximum effect.
Crime Scene Investigator’s
Course No: 13c/3105

Aim of Course
The CSI Course qualifies students to forensically examine scenes of crime in accordance with the United Kingdom’s National Occupational Standards.

Outline of Syllabus
- Crime Scene Photography
- Forensic Science
- Crime Scene Management
- Search Methods and Techniques
- Alternative Light Sources
- Anti-Contamination
- Trace Evidence Recovery
- Recovering Cyber Crime exhibits
- Identifying and recovering the deceased
- Forensic Strategies
- Evidence of Sexual Offences
- Fire and Arson Investigation
- Forensic Post Mortem
- Vehicle Examination
- Forensic Odontology
- Fingerprints
- Presenting Evidence in a Court of Law.

Remarks
This course provides theoretical and practical teaching in all aspects of crime scene investigation, enabling the student to record a scene and identify, interpret and recover evidence in accordance with the United Kingdom’s Occupational Standards. World Class forensic equipment and training facilities are used to provide this course.

Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
---|---|---|---|---
Nil, although awareness of a Crime Scene desirable. | 40 Days (8 Weeks) | CSI National Occupancy Standard Certificate | 3 courses per year
# Aviation & Venue Security

**Course No: 13c/1457**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
|               | • Threats to security from airport terminals, VIP areas, concerts and seminars  
|               | • Recognition of dangerous items, prohibited items and restricted items  
|               | • Recognition of the different types of explosive materials and their constituent parts  
|               | • Recognition of personally concealed weapons, including knives, firearms and their constituent parts and ammunition  
|               | • X-Ray image analysis using Smith Detection equipment, including HI Scan, Advanced Walk Through Metal Detector, ION Scan 600, Hand Held Metal Detectors and Bottle Scanner.  
|               | The course provides theoretical and practical teaching in the threats to security in highly populated areas, including airport passenger terminals, VIP areas, music concerts and seminars. Students will be taught how to use Smiths Detection equipment to screen personnel and baggage for dangerous, prohibited and restricted items. Practical searching of personnel and a model aircraft will also be provided, resulting in a multiple choice test of knowledge performed on specialist computer software. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>Level 3 Aviation and Venue Security</td>
<td>3 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Incident First Responder’s Course

**Course No:**

### Aim of Course

The Incident First Responder’s Course teaches serving International Forces personnel how to conduct initial response procedures to incidents or crimes committed in international theatres of operation.

### Outline of Syllabus

- Core Investigative Legislation
- Principles of First Response
- Use of Incident Logbooks
- Evidence Recording Processes
- Detention and search of Suspects of Crime
- Principles of Sexual Crime and Victim Safeguarding
- Collating biometric evidence (fingerprints and DNA)
- Personal Safety Training Techniques
- Responding to Road Traffic Accidents and Incidents
- Incident Photography and Sketch Plan Recording
- Forensic Awareness
- Crime Reduction Principles.

### Remarks

The course provides theoretical and practical teaching to first responders to road traffic accidents, criminal incidents or attempted criminal incidents in various theatres of operations worldwide, including international military exercises and humanitarian missions. The elements delivered on this course are standardised across the British Military, which have been proven to work in many theatres of operation.

### Rank Range & Entry Standards

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lieutenant to Captain &amp; Corporal to Sergeant</td>
<td>IELTS level 6</td>
<td>10 days</td>
<td>Certificate of completion, prerequisite for further specialist training i.e. MPOC</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Military Police Officers

**Course No: 13c/3106**

**DCLPA Southwick Park**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The Military Police Officers Course teaches commissioned military personnel, how to lead and manage investigations procedures to incidents or crimes committed in both the UK and in international theatres of operation. | • Core Investigative Legislation  
• Service justice system  
• Civil and Common Law  
• Use of Incident Logbooks  
• Evidence Recording Processes  
• Detention and search of Suspects of Crime  
• Principles of Sexual Crime and Victim Safeguarding  
• Collating biometric evidence (fingerprints and DNA)  
• Personal Safety Training Techniques  
• Responding to Road Traffic Accidents and Incidents  
• Incident Photography and Sketch Plan Recording  
• Forensic Awareness  
• Use of Service Police Computer Systems  
• Management of investigations  
• Interview techniques  
• Battle Craft Syllabus  
• Personnel Management- welfare processes, reporting responsibilities, career development. | This course aims to produce a Royal Military Police Officer able to lead and manage Provost Operations and further manage Police Enquires to Level 2. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2Lt (OF1)-Capt(OF2)</td>
<td>IELTS level 6 Physically fit, hold a Commission</td>
<td>13 Weeks</td>
<td>Certificate of completion, prerequisite for Officers in order to attend further specialist training i.e. SCIC</td>
<td>2 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Personal Safety Training Basic User

**Course No: 13c/1461**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The Personal Safety Training course is designed to support and inform operational decision-making and training to improve safety during the policing of violent or potentially violent situations. | • Components of Communication  
• Tactical Communications  
• Use of Force  
• Explain Legislation covering the Use of Force  
• The Rules of Engagement  
• Explain the tri-service Policy for the use of Defensive tactics equipment  
• Explain the National Decision Making Model  
• Explain the hazards and risks associated with Personal Management  
• Carry out basic operation of the Rigid handcuffs  
• Carry out proficient use of the Autolock Baton  
• Carry out Post Use Procedures  
• Use of unarmed Defensive Tactics  
• Carry out the Correct Application of Limb Restraints. | The Personal Safety Training Basic User Course gives the Service Police Officer the base level of assurance required to be able to operate competently as a Service Police Officer when faced with a kinetic or potentially kinetic situation. Upon the successful completion of the course the Service Police Officer is qualified in the use of Rigid Handcuffs and Autolock baton and is authorised to utilise this equipment in the discharge of their duties. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Student must be physically fit and free of any injury.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>15 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DCLPA Southwick Park**
# Personal Safety Training Basic Unit Instructor

**Course No: 13c/1462**

DCLPA Southwick Park

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| The Personal Safety Training Unit Instructor Course is designed to train personnel in order to carry out Mandated refresher training at Unit Level, to maintain personnel currency requirements. | • Carry Out Lesson Administration.  
• Carry Out Instruction into Tactical Communication.  
• Carry Out Instruction on the use of the Rigid Handcuffs.  
• Carry Out Instruction on the Use of the Baton.  
• Carry out Instruction on the Use of unarmed tactics.  
• Provide Advice on Training Requirements.  
• Carry out Instruction into the use of Limb Restraints. | The Personal Safety Training Basic UI Course is designed to qualify Service Police Officers as Personal Safety Instructors so that they can conduct on the job training at Unit Level and thus maintain mandated Home Office figures on qualification. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Students should have a minimum of 2 years experience as a Personal Safety Practitioner.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td>Certificate of Completion</td>
<td>6 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Conflict Management and Restraint

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| This Course is designed to teach the students how to recognise and deal with potentially confrontational situations as well as basic self-defence techniques. | • Components of Communication.  
• Use of Force  
• Explain Legislation covering the Use of Force.  
• Use of unarmed Defensive Tactics. | The Conflict Management and Restraint course is designed to make students aware of how to recognise and defuse dangerous situations as well as giving a very baseline level of self-defence awareness. |

**DCLPA Southwick Park**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>TBD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### RMAS Courses

#### Regular Army Commissioning

**Course No: 403/009**

#### Aim of Course

Through military training and education to develop leadership in cadets by expanding their character, intellect and professional competencies to a level demanded of an Army Officer on first appointment.

#### Entry Standards

- **Age:** 18 - 28 years of age.
- **IELTS level:** 5.5.
- **Height and weight:** Not less than 1.5m high and 50 kilos in weight.
- **Body Mass Index (BMI):** Must be between 18 to 28 (Males) and 18 to 27 (Females).
- **Medical fitness:** Be medically fit. Asthma, lung or heart conditions, and back or limb injuries or abnormalities will preclude entry.
- **Physical fitness:** Be physically fit and robust, and be able to carry weight (web equipment and backpack).

#### On arrival able to:

- Run 2.4 kilometres in 10 minutes 30 seconds (males) (13 minutes for females), after a warm up of 800 metres in 4 minutes 50 seconds.
- Complete 50 sit ups in 2 minutes (male & female).
- Complete 44 press ups in 2 minutes (21 for females).
- Swim 100 metres any stroke.
- A working knowledge of IT up to European Computer Driving Licence (ECDL) Modules 1, 2, 3 and 7.
- Have the will and determination to succeed on a challenging course.

#### Outline of Syllabus

**Junior Officer Qualities**

- Leadership and Management on the battlefield and in barracks, including:
  - How to analyse, plan and communicate effectively
  - How to control and complete tasks, and evaluate progress and outcomes
  - Application of the Values and Standards expected of an Army Officer
  - Application of communication and behavioural science techniques.

**Basic Military Competencies**

- Teamwork
- Combat fitness
- Weapon handling (Platoon level)
- Operate communications equipment (Platoon / Company Level)
- Navigation
- Battlefield First Aid
- Basic Fieldcraft
- Application of basic tactics (Platoon / Company Level)

**Broader Academic Development**

- War studies - analysis of previous conflicts
- Analysis of current British Military Doctrine
- Analysis of conflict, and the current political and strategic context

#### Remarks

Places will be allocated by invitation only. There is no requirement to bid for places. Cadets should be aware this is a physically & mentally demanding course.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Candidates for an Initial Commission</td>
<td>Please see column above</td>
<td>Each course is of 11 months duration, comprising three terms each of 14 weeks.</td>
<td></td>
<td>3 courses per year commencing in January, May and September.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Junior Officers Tactics Awareness Course (JOTAC)

**Course No: 490/001**

**Aim of Course**
To prepare officers for the rank of Captain by raising their awareness of combined arms tactics and by developing their combat staff skills.

**Endstate:**
The course end state is an officer who has the requisite combat knowledge required of a sub-unit 2IC, a watch keeper, a liaison officer and with further training, a specialist troop commander or combat staff officer.

**Outline of Syllabus**
The course consists of 1 week of residential pre-course training, followed by a 4 week main course consisting of tactical exercises without troops and classroom exercises assisted by computer simulation. The focus is on the subunit activities, but there is exposure to the battle group level. The training objectives include mission planning, force preparation, deployment and recovery, simulated ground manoeuvre, protection and the management of combat service support.

**Remarks**
- 3-4 years of Regimental Duty
- An understanding of British Military Doctrine and terminology would be most useful although this is covered in the pre-course for international students.

## Rank Range | Entry Standards | Duration | Qualifications gained | Frequency
---|---|---|---|---
Lieutenant to Captain | IELTS level 5.5 | 4 weeks preceded by 1 week pre-course training for international students. Total 5 weeks | | 7 courses per training year available to international students
Junior Command and Staff Course (Land) (JCSC(L))

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Captain (Platoon Commander, sub-unit 2IC, junior Staff Officer)</td>
<td>IELTS level 6. No age limit but should have 4-8 years of military (Land Forces) experience. Be capable of walking 2km, over rough terrain, with a daysack of not more than 15kg</td>
<td>Each course is 7 weeks long. This includes 1 week of pre-course training specifically designed for international students but NOT language training</td>
<td></td>
<td>Typically there will be 3 courses each year, however, his may vary. IDT(A) can advise on course availability.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**
To deliver tactical command and staff education to officers and prepare them for future employment as a captain on the staff.

**Outline of Syllabus**
Students will be educated to:
- Understand and apply the British Army’s Combat Estimate to tactical problems at both Battlegroup and Brigade level.
- Understand and apply the communication, cognitive and analytical abilities of a staff officer.
- Understand Army structures and how they support operations and training.
- Have an awareness of contemporary warfighting challenges.

**Remarks**
RMAS Gp Warminster
# Master of Science (MSc) in Geo Spatial Intelligence

**Course No: 411/024**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Aim of Course</th>
<th>Outline of Syllabus</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To provide students with the knowledge and skills, both technical and managerial, required by Professional Geographic Officers in support of the defence community.</td>
<td>A taught phase consisting of ten modules as follows:  • Analytical Techniques  • Reference Systems  • Information Systems  • Positioning  • Image Processing  • Spatial Analysis  • Imagery Exploitation  • Spatial Data Presentation  • Spatial Software Systems  • Defence Geographic Requirements  • A group project that is designed to consolidate much of the taught phase of the DGI MSc and to give students a practical exercise in operational support  • For MSc students an extended research project  • A dissertation for an extended research project related to the syllabus.</td>
<td>This is a highly demanding MSc programme and candidates should be aware that great emphasis is placed on individual responsibility for studying, teamwork and research. All candidates attending should be nominated by 31 January each year in order that pre-course study in either Mathematics or English can be advised if appropriate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Survey Courses

Pre-Course: 5 weeks. Survey Course (The MSc): 1 year.

- Cranfield University will award successful candidates a Master of Science Degree. Successful candidates will be eligible for exemption from the final examinations of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors.
- A taught phase consisting of ten modules as follows:  • Analytical Techniques  • Reference Systems  • Information Systems  • Positioning  • Image Processing  • Spatial Analysis  • Imagery Exploitation  • Spatial Data Presentation  • Spatial Software Systems  • Defence Geographic Requirements  • A group project that is designed to consolidate much of the taught phase of the DGI MSc and to give students a practical exercise in operational support  • For MSc students an extended research project  • A dissertation for an extended research project related to the syllabus.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Lieutenant to Lieutenant Colonel or civilian equivalent. | IELTS level 7. (Academic test)  
Qualified to First Degree (BSc) or equivalent level, ideally in Engineering or Geography.  
Qualified to UK Advanced level or equivalent in Mathematics. | Pre-Course: 5 weeks. Survey Course (The MSc): 1 year. | Cranfield University will award successful candidates a Master of Science Degree. Successful candidates will be eligible for exemption from the final examinations of the Royal Institution of Chartered Surveyors. | 1 course per year. (The Pre-Course will always commence in September) |
# Survey Courses

## Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) Advanced User

**Course No: 411/041**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lance Corporal to Major or civilian equivalent</td>
<td>Must have attended the Defence GIS User course at RSMS or have suitable qualifications or experience.</td>
<td>5 days</td>
<td></td>
<td>5 courses per year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks**

The course is aimed at Defence personnel who have a responsibility for operating GIS.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The course expands upon the theory and practical experience gained on the Defence GIS Users Course and will include network analysis, 3D modelling, temporal analysis, site selection, least cost path analysis and the collection of data using GIS.

The course will involve the use of ESRI ArcGIS within a defence environment, with both taught and practical components. All practical exercises will be based on a defence scenario, which will include components applicable for personnel from all armed services, whether land, sea or air based in addition to MOD civilians.

The course covers:

- Data input options and techniques including GPS
- The issues of data types and collection
- A wider understanding of the complex questions GIS can answer
- Web Publishing of GIS maps and data
- Management of geospatial databases
- Creation of new raster and vector data sets from paper sources
- Analysis of data within 2D, 3D and 4D (temporal) environments
- Production of derived data sets
- Complex spatial analysis
- Combination of data from many sources
- Interrogation of network geospatial data.

**Aim of Course**

To provide users, already familiar with the basics of GIS, practical experience of the advanced functionality available.
## Defence Geographic Information Systems (GIS) User

**Course No: 411/040**

### Aim of Course
To provide an understanding of military digital geographic data and teach students to use GIS to import, create, manipulate, query, display and analyse that data.

### Outline of Syllabus
The course takes the student through the various digital geographic data structures and explains the military data sets and the appropriate use and limitations of each type.

Students will then gain a theoretical and practical understanding of basic GIS functionality using military datasets.

Teaching methods include instructor-led lectures, demonstrations and practical confirmation exercises. Tuition is split approximately 40% theory and 60% practical with all practical exercises based on a Defence scenario with an Air, Land and Sea component.

The course includes:
- Digital Data types, sources and copyright issues relating to digital data.
- Datums and Projections

Use of GIS to:
- Identify, import and manage data
- Create and edit vector data
- Produce derived data sets
- Answer basic spatial queries
- Create a basic map product

Geo processing - Data Re-Projection

Analysis techniques (view-sheds, weighted overlays, least cost path)

Visualisation and digital terrain modelling.

### Remarks
The course is aimed at Defence personnel who have a responsibility for operating GIS.

### Rank Range
Lance Corporal to Major or civilian equivalent

### Entry Standards
- IELTS level 6.
- ECDL Module 1 - Basic Concepts of IT.
- ECDL Module 2 - Using the Computer and managing files.
- ECDL Module 5 - Database or equivalent experience.

### Duration
5 days

### Qualifications gained

### Frequency
10 courses per year
## Close Protection Courses

### Close Protection Course (CPC)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 – OF3 (LCpl – Maj)</td>
<td>Fluent in verbal and written English (if not the applicant’s host nation are required to provide interpreters). Category B driving license and EU driving license.</td>
<td>8 working weeks, inclusive of weekends if required</td>
<td>RMP CPC ‘Pass’ certificate – If all Training Objectives are achieved. RMP CPC ‘Attend’ certificate – If course is completed but not all Training Objectives are achieved.</td>
<td>3 courses per year (Mar – Apr, Jun – Jul, Sep – Oct).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Remarks:**

Applicants should be physically and mentally prepared to undertake arduous training. Applicants are required to be fluent in verbal and written English (if not the applicant’s host nation are required to provide interpreters). Applicants are required to be in possession of a category B driving license and EU driving license, if not driving will be limited to MOD estates.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The Training and Enabling Objectives of this course will include theoretical and practical instruction on the following areas:

- The Threat
- Containment
- Planning
- Personal Security
- Search
- Weapon Training
- Vehicle Anti Ambush
- CP Team Organisation
- Tactical Walking Drills
- Reaction to Attack
- Situational Awareness
- Embus / Debus
- Individual Bodyguard
- Personal Escort Section
- Security Advance Party
- Close Quarter Combat
- Physical Training
- Protocol
- Licensing Exercise

**Aim of Course**

To train students in the preventative and reactive measures to be taken by Close Protection personnel to protect a person who is specifically or generally under threat of assassination, kidnapping or other illegal acts committed by terrorists or criminals.
### Bespoke Close Protection Course (BCPC)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 – OF5 (LCpl – Col)</td>
<td>Fluent in verbal and written English (if not the applicant’s host nation are required to provide interpreters). Category B driving license and EU driving license.</td>
<td>4 – 6 working weeks, inclusive of weekends if required.</td>
<td>RMP CPC ‘Pass’ certificate – If all Training Objectives are achieved. RMP CPC ‘Attend’ certificate – If course is completed but not all Training Objectives are achieved.</td>
<td>As requested.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Close Protection Evasive Driving Course - Basic (CPEDC-B)

Course No: Longmoor Camp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 – OF3 (LCpl – Maj) Civilian equivalent.</td>
<td>Good understanding of the English language. Equivalent UK category B driving license.</td>
<td>5 working days</td>
<td>RMP EDC-B ‘Pass’ certificate – If all Training Objectives are achieved. RMP EDC-B ‘Attend’ certificate – If course is completed but not all Training Objectives are achieved.</td>
<td>4 courses per year or as required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Aim of Course**

To train students in the preventative and reactive measures to be taken by a designated driver of a soft skin vehicle to protect a person who is specifically or generally under threat of assassination, kidnapping or other illegal acts committed by terrorists or criminals.

**Outline of Syllabus**

The Training and Enabling Objectives of this course will include theoretical and practical instruction on the following areas:

- First Parade
- Embus / Debus
- Failed Accent / Decent
- Personal Security
- The Threat
- Vehicle Search
- Vehicle Dynamics
- Vehicle Anti Ambush
- Protocol
- Cross-Country Driving
- One Car Tactical Driving
- Confirmation Exercise

**Remarks**

Applicants should be physically and mentally prepared to undertake training. Applicants are required to have a good understanding of the English language. Applicants are required to be in possession of an equivalent UK category B driving license, if not driving will not be permitted.
# Close Protection Evasive Driving Course - Advanced (CPEDC-A)

**Course No:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rank Range</th>
<th>Entry Standards</th>
<th>Duration</th>
<th>Qualifications gained</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR3 – OF3 (LCpl – Maj)</td>
<td>Good understanding of the English language. Equivalent UK category B and C driving license.</td>
<td>10 working days</td>
<td>RMP EDC-A ‘Pass’ certificate – If all Training Objectives are achieved. RMP EDC-A ‘Attend’ certificate – If course is completed but not all Training Objectives are achieved.</td>
<td>4 courses per year or as required</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Aim of Course
To train students in the preventative and reactive measures to be taken by a designated driver of a soft skin vehicle and a civilian armoured vehicle (CAV) to protect a person who is specifically or generally under threat of assassination, kidnapping or other illegal acts committed by terrorists or criminals.

### Outline of Syllabus
- First Parade
- Embus / Debus
- Failed Accent / Decent
- Personal Security
- The Threat
- Vehicle Search
- Vehicle Dynamics
- Vehicle Anti Ambush
- Protocol
- X-Country Driving
- One Car Tactical Driving
- Two Vehicle Anti Ambush
- CAV Dynamics
- CAV X-Country Driving
- Two Car Tactical Driving
- Confirmation Exercise.

### Remarks
- Applicants should be physically and mentally prepared to undertake training. Applicants are required to have a good understanding of the English language. Applicants are required to be in possession of an equivalent UK category B and C driving licenses, if not driving will not be permitted.